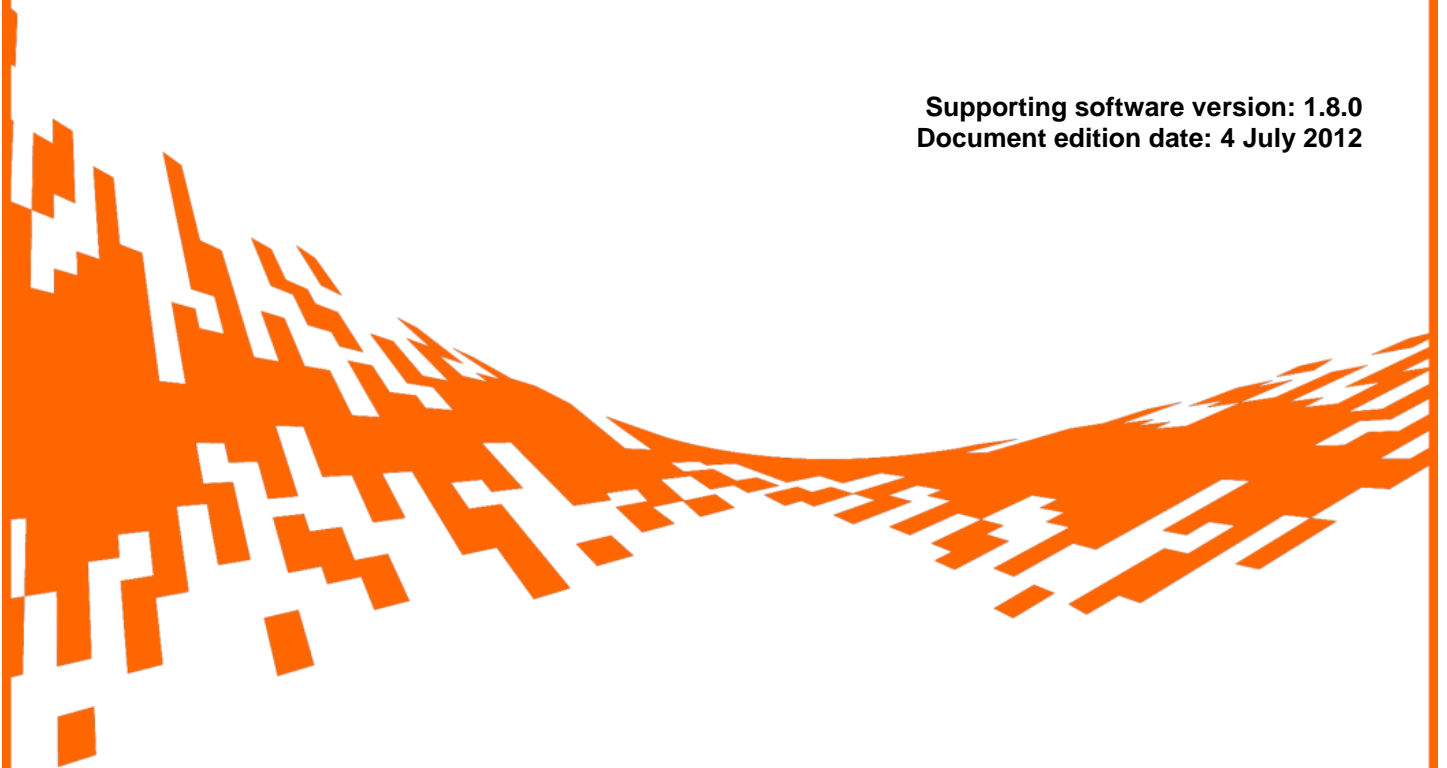


# User Guide

Supporting software version: 1.8.0  
Document edition date: 4 July 2012



Documents are subject to change without prior notice and with immediate effect.

**Albany Software Limited** Albany House Omega Park Alton Hampshire GU34 2QE  
T +44 (0)1420 547600 F +44 (0)1420 547601 [info@albany.co.uk](mailto:info@albany.co.uk) [www.albany.co.uk](http://www.albany.co.uk)  
Registered in England and Wales No. 2366012  
© 1989-2011 Albany Software Limited. Company Confidential. All rights reserved.

**ALBANY**  
s o f t w a r e

**DISCLAIMER**

Albany Software Limited makes no representations or warranties regarding the contents of this document. We reserve the right to revise this document or make changes in the specifications of the product described within it at any time without notice and without obligation to notify any person of such revision or change.

**COPYRIGHT NOTICE**

This document is copyright. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means – electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise – without the prior written permission of Albany Software Limited.

**INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY WARNING**

The contents of this document and the software it describes are the intellectual property of Albany Software Limited. The ideas contained in this document must not be disclosed to any third party.

**TRADEMARK NOTICE**

Albany ePAY is a registered trademark of Albany Software Limited.

Other trademarks recognised and property of their respective owners.

## Contents

List of Illustrations .....	vii
1 Introduction.....	1
2 Albany Software Limited.....	2
2.1 About the application .....	2
2.2 Contact Albany Software Ltd .....	3
3 Basic Concepts .....	4
3.1 Editions and licensing .....	4
3.2 Logging in.....	4
3.3 Close the application.....	5
3.4 Change password .....	5
3.5 Interface .....	6
3.5.1 Status bar information .....	7
3.5.2 Hiding areas of the screen.....	8
3.5.3 Views .....	8
3.5.4 Navigation menu.....	8
3.6 Getting further help .....	9
3.7 Bacs 3 Day processing .....	10
3.7.1 Day 1: Input day.....	10
3.7.2 Day 2: Processing day.....	10
3.7.3 Day 3: Entry day .....	10
3.7.4 Transaction limit.....	11
3.8 Faster Payments Service .....	11
3.8.1 Processing period .....	11
3.8.2 Procedure .....	11
3.8.3 Transaction limit.....	11
3.8.1 Banks.....	12
3.9 Other payment methods .....	12
3.9.1 RBS Bankline.....	12
3.9.2 HSBC Export .....	12
3.10 Bacs payment authorisation.....	13
3.10.1 Smart Cards.....	13
3.10.2 Hardware Security Modules .....	13
3.11 Communication .....	14
4 System Setup .....	15
4.1 Audit Reports .....	15
4.2 End of Day Configuration.....	19
4.2.1 Report Collection .....	20
4.3 Purging and Archiving.....	20
4.3.1 Set up a schedule .....	21
4.4 Bacs Connections .....	23
4.4.1 Default connection .....	23
4.4.2 Proxy settings .....	23
4.5 System Settings .....	24
4.6 Dual Administration Settings.....	24
4.6.1 Enabling.....	25
4.6.2 Disabling.....	27

4.6.3	Notifications .....	27
4.7	System Maintenance .....	27
4.7.1	Bank Account Validation .....	28
4.7.2	Automatic backup .....	28
4.7.3	Non Processing Days .....	30
4.7.4	Edit schedule .....	30
5	Administration.....	32
	User Activity.....	32
5.1	Dual Administration Changes .....	32
5.1.1	Refresh view .....	33
5.1.2	Accept/Reject Changes .....	33
5.1.3	Show Pending or All Requests .....	33
5.1.4	Search .....	33
5.2	Current User Activity .....	34
	User Settings .....	36
5.3	User Segregation .....	36
5.4	Users .....	36
5.4.1	Create user .....	37
5.4.2	Delete user account.....	39
5.4.3	Maintaining user accounts .....	39
5.4.4	Dual Administration control.....	40
5.5	Groups .....	40
5.5.1	Create groups .....	41
5.5.2	Modify group details .....	41
5.5.3	Delete group .....	41
5.6	Contacts .....	41
5.6.1	Create contacts.....	41
5.6.2	Modify contact details .....	42
5.6.3	Delete contact.....	42
5.7	Permissions.....	42
5.7.1	Users tab .....	44
5.7.2	Groups tab .....	44
5.7.3	Modify permissions .....	44
5.7.4	New defaults .....	46
5.7.5	Administrative functions.....	46
5.7.6	Dual Administration .....	47
5.8	Bacs User Certificates .....	48
5.8.1	Check that the certificate is active .....	49
5.8.2	Register the Certificates .....	50
5.8.3	Associate a user, Bacs User Certificate and SUN .....	50
	Payment Settings .....	51
5.9	Payment Profiles .....	52
5.9.1	Create payment profiles .....	52
5.9.2	Workflow .....	58
5.9.3	Schedule.....	64
5.9.4	Dual Administration control.....	68
5.10	File Formats .....	69
5.10.1	Import file format.....	71
5.10.2	Edit a file format definition .....	73
5.10.3	Create a new file format .....	75
5.10.4	Export file format.....	76

5.11	Originating Accounts .....	78
5.11.1	Usage information.....	78
5.11.2	Add originating account .....	78
5.11.3	Usage information.....	79
5.11.4	Edit an originating account .....	80
5.11.5	Remove an originating account .....	80
5.12	Bacs Limits.....	80
5.13	Bacs SUN Information .....	82
5.14	Payment Profile Notification Templates .....	83
5.14.1	Creating a new template.....	83
5.14.2	Delete template.....	84
5.14.3	Attach to a profile.....	84
6	Payments .....	85
6.1	Processing wizard overview.....	85
6.2	Wizard .....	86
6.2.1	Validation database .....	87
6.2.2	Validation .....	87
6.2.3	Confirm .....	89
6.2.4	Authorise.....	92
6.2.5	Send .....	96
6.3	Submission reports .....	97
6.3.1	From the payment wizard .....	98
6.4	Payment file .....	100
6.4.1	Transaction details.....	101
6.4.2	Output file .....	101
6.5	Certificate details.....	101
6.6	Pending payments .....	103
6.6.1	Resume the wizard .....	103
6.6.2	Pending screen tools .....	104
6.6.3	Payment details .....	105
6.6.4	Delete payment.....	107
6.6.5	Refresh the screen .....	107
6.7	Sent payments .....	108
6.7.1	Transaction processing details .....	109
6.8	Complete payments .....	109
6.8.1	Payment details .....	109
7	Payments Manager .....	110
7.1	Create new payment library .....	112
7.1.2	Attach to a payment profile.....	113
7.2	Library records .....	114
7.2.1	Add records manually .....	114
7.3	Import contacts.....	115
7.4	Library maintenance .....	118
7.4.1	Print .....	118
7.4.2	Selecting contacts.....	118
7.4.3	Search .....	120
7.4.4	Hold contact records.....	121
7.4.5	Edit contact records.....	121
7.4.6	Delete contact records.....	121
8	Reports.....	122

8.1	Report Display.....	122
8.1.1	Manual marking .....	123
8.1.2	Filter read/unread .....	124
8.1.3	Delete .....	124
8.1.4	Sort .....	125
8.2	Report Download Profiles .....	125
8.2.1	Create a new Report Download Profile .....	125
8.2.2	Scheduling .....	127
8.2.3	View an existing Report Download Profile .....	131
8.2.4	Notifications .....	131
8.3	Submission Reports .....	131
8.3.1	From the payment wizard .....	132
8.4	Returns and Advices .....	135
8.5	Report Security .....	139
8.6	Report Delivery .....	139
8.6.1	Select SUNs .....	140
8.6.2	Select reports.....	140
8.6.3	Recipients .....	140
8.6.4	Activate and Save.....	143
8.7	Report Download Activity.....	143
8.8	Report naming conventions .....	144
9	Customising grids.....	146
9.1	Pinning columns.....	146
9.2	Reordering columns.....	147
10	Web Links.....	148
11	Troubleshooting.....	150
11.1	Service user permissions and access.....	150
11.1.1	Backup failure .....	150
11.1.2	Input/Output folders .....	150
11.2	Submission response errors .....	150
11.3	Failed to Connect .....	150
11.4	Inability to import an input file .....	152
11.4.1	Cannot find the input file .....	152
11.4.2	File Format conflict .....	153
11.5	Profile setup .....	154
11.6	Expired certificate, Invalid or inactive smart card .....	154
11.7	Hanging on Validation.....	156
11.7.1	Printer issues .....	156
11.7.2	File format conflict.....	156
11.8	Unable to Send .....	156
11.9	Verify Update failure .....	156
11.9.1	Connection error .....	156
11.9.2	Clock synchronisation.....	157
11.9.3	Database error.....	158
Appendix A:	Payment profile processing rules .....	159
Appendix B:	Transaction Codes.....	164
Appendix C:	File handling .....	165
Appendix D:	File Format Definitions .....	168

Appendix E: Response messages ..... 172

Appendix F: Glossary..... 194

## List of Illustrations

Figure 1: About the application .....	2
Figure 2: Support information .....	3
Figure 3: Log in .....	4
Figure 4: Logging off .....	5
Figure 5: Forced password change .....	6
Figure 6: Change password dialog .....	6
Figure 7: Application screen .....	7
Figure 8: Status bar information .....	8
Figure 9: Menu resize .....	9
Figure 10: Hidden menus .....	9
Figure 11: System Setup screen .....	15
Figure 12: Audit Report Wizard – Report Type .....	16
Figure 13: Audit Report Wizard - Users.....	17
Figure 14: Audit Report Wizard – Delivery .....	18
Figure 15: Select recipients .....	18
Figure 16: Audit Report Wizard – Export location .....	19
Figure 17: End of day configuration.....	20
Figure 18: Purging and archiving.....	21
Figure 19: Purging and archiving schedule .....	21
Figure 20: Schedule period .....	22
Figure 21: Bacs connections .....	23
Figure 22: System Settings .....	24
Figure 23: Dual Administration limited approvers.....	25
Figure 24: Payment Settings unavailable .....	26
Figure 25: Dual Administration settings for selection .....	26
Figure 26: Awaiting approval .....	27
Figure 27: System Maintenance .....	28
Figure 28: Database Backup .....	29
Figure 29: Default Non Processing Days schedule .....	31
Figure 30: Dual Administration pending items.....	32
Figure 31: Dual Administration Changes screen .....	33
Figure 32: Current user activity .....	35
Figure 33: Dual Administration Pending message .....	36
Figure 34: Group membership.....	38
Figure 35: Active group membership.....	39
Figure 36: Dual Administration Pending .....	40
Figure 37: Permissions screen .....	43
Figure 38: Users tab – showing group membership.....	44
Figure 39: Groups tab – showing membership.....	44
Figure 40: Expanded permissions .....	45
Figure 41: Inherited permissions .....	45
Figure 42: Approval Pending .....	48
Figure 43: Permission changes pending .....	48
Figure 44: Bacs user certificates screen .....	49
Figure 45: Certificate selector dialog .....	51
Figure 46: Dual Administration Pending message .....	52



Figure 47: Profile description .....	53
Figure 48: Processing rules – Basic view .....	54
Figure 49: Processing rules – Advanced view .....	55
Figure 50: Attach payment library .....	56
Figure 51: Report delivery settings .....	56
Figure 52: Email delivery settings .....	57
Figure 53: Workflow validation .....	60
Figure 54: Confirm automated message .....	61
Figure 55: Workflow confirmation .....	61
Figure 56: Workflow authorisation .....	62
Figure 57: Select notification recipients .....	63
Figure 58: Notification recipient list .....	63
Figure 59: Workflow .....	64
Figure 60: Schedule form .....	65
Figure 61: Copy schedule .....	66
Figure 62: Schedule recurrence options .....	66
Figure 63: Schedule calendar control .....	68
Figure 64: Dual Administration Pending .....	69
Figure 65: File formats .....	70
Figure 66: Lines & Fields .....	71
Figure 67: Browse for file format .....	72
Figure 68: Delete element row .....	74
Figure 69: Row reordering .....	74
Figure 70: Create file format from copy .....	75
Figure 71: File format copy .....	76
Figure 72: File format export .....	77
Figure 73: Originating accounts .....	78
Figure 74: Bacs Limits Screen .....	80
Figure 75: Bacs limits .....	81
Figure 76: Bacs SUN example .....	82
Figure 77: Bacs SUN information .....	82
Figure 78: Payment profile notification templates .....	83
Figure 79: Payment profiles detailed list .....	87
Figure 80: Validation database update required .....	87
Figure 81: Validate .....	88
Figure 82: Confirm validation .....	90
Figure 83: Confirm RBS Bankline .....	91
Figure 84: Authorise 1 of 3 .....	92
Figure 85: Authorisation signing mandatory .....	93
Figure 86: View certificate .....	94
Figure 87: Change user certificate .....	94
Figure 88: Payment process history .....	95
Figure 89: Smartcard Required .....	95
Figure 90: PIN code request .....	95
Figure 91: Payment successfully sent to BACS .....	97
Figure 92: Compact submission reports list .....	98
Figure 93: Expanded submission reports list .....	98
Figure 94: Summary report example .....	99
Figure 95: Detailed report example .....	100

Figure 96: Payment file errors .....	101
Figure 97: User certificate.....	102
Figure 98: Change user certificate example.....	102
Figure 99: Certificate selector dialog .....	103
Figure 100: File details examples.....	104
Figure 101: History example.....	105
Figure 102: Permitted users example.....	105
Figure 103: Payment Details form .....	106
Figure 104: Change Assignee .....	107
Figure 105: Sent payments file details .....	108
Figure 106: Sent payments history .....	108
Figure 107: Libraries .....	111
Figure 108: Contact records .....	112
Figure 109: Attach payment library.....	113
Figure 110: Import contacts dialog .....	116
Figure 111: File format import .....	116
Figure 112: Select single contact .....	118
Figure 113: Select multiple contacts.....	118
Figure 114: Print contacts dialog .....	119
Figure 115: Contacts report example .....	120
Figure 116: Contacts search result example .....	120
Figure 117: Hold contact.....	121
Figure 118: Unread report count .....	123
Figure 119: New Report Download Profile .....	126
Figure 120: New hourly report retrieval schedule.....	128
Figure 121: Copy schedule.....	128
Figure 122: Report schedule start date .....	130
Figure 123: Compacted Submission Reports.....	131
Figure 124: Expanded Submission Reports .....	132
Figure 125: View Reports dialog .....	132
Figure 126: Example summary report .....	133
Figure 127: Example detailed report .....	134
Figure 128: View Reports dialog showing read reports.....	135
Figure 129: Select Report Download Profile .....	135
Figure 130: Reports retrieval – Criteria selection .....	136
Figure 131: Report retrieval – Report selection.....	138
Figure 132: Example Returns and Advices screen results.....	138
Figure 133: Report Delivery screen.....	140
Figure 134: Report Delivery recipients .....	141
Figure 135: Select report format.....	142
Figure 136: Select email recipients dialog.....	142
Figure 137: Report Download Activity screen .....	143
Figure 138: Report Download Activity expanded .....	144
Figure 139: Choose Columns dialog .....	146
Figure 140: Column labels.....	146
Figure 141: Column reordering.....	147
Figure 142: Web links .....	148
Figure 143: Albany Support Web Page .....	149
Figure 144: Failed to Connect message.....	151

Figure 145: Failure message .....	152
Figure 146: Unable to import input file.....	153
Figure 147: Bacs User Certificate expired or missing .....	155
Figure 148: Trusted sites .....	157
Figure 149: File handling diagram .....	167

# 1 Introduction

Welcome to the Albany ePAY® user guide. This document is designed to complement the Albany ePAY software. Much of the information contained in here is also included in the online help which is always at your fingertips while working with Albany ePAY. This document provides more detailed and illustrated information with conceptual background information that the online help lacks.

Albany ePAY is intelligent payments management, ensuring security from both external interference and internal misuse. This system can be used for both payroll and supplier payments with confidence that personal details regarding salary are not compromised as the two sets of data are maintained completely independently and are confidential from unauthorised users.

Albany ePAY is configured specifically for your working practices. For this reason, the views presented in this help system may vary from the exact edition of the software that you are using, particularly since this software integrates with all accounting and payroll applications, not just the one you use.

Albany ePAY is the fast and effortless way for businesses to transfer funds electronically, supporting a variety of payment methods and routes, including Bacs 3 day payments and Faster Payments Service (FPS). Albany ePAY supports both payment and collection of funds, eliminating traditional paper based methods such as cheques, giros and cash. It holds a high level of information available during processing, after submission and from a management perspective as well as full audit trails, reconciliation reports, notification of account changes and the ability to configure your reports to your specification.

Albany ePAY can be used in a variety of scenarios, including salaries, pensions, expenses, supplier payments, subscriptions, Credit Card payments, mortgages, lease payments and rent collection and is flexible enough for any size of organisation. Some of the many benefits include reduced bank and administration costs, improved cash flow, and greater accuracy.

With the ability to send up to 250,000 transactions per hour, the transfer of information using Albany ePAY is streamlined, efficient and extremely cost effective.

## 2 Albany Software Limited

Since 1989, Albany Software has been developing software to transform the delivery of your documents, data and funds. We provide a portfolio of powerful, integrated software solutions to meet the immediate and future needs of businesses of any type and size.

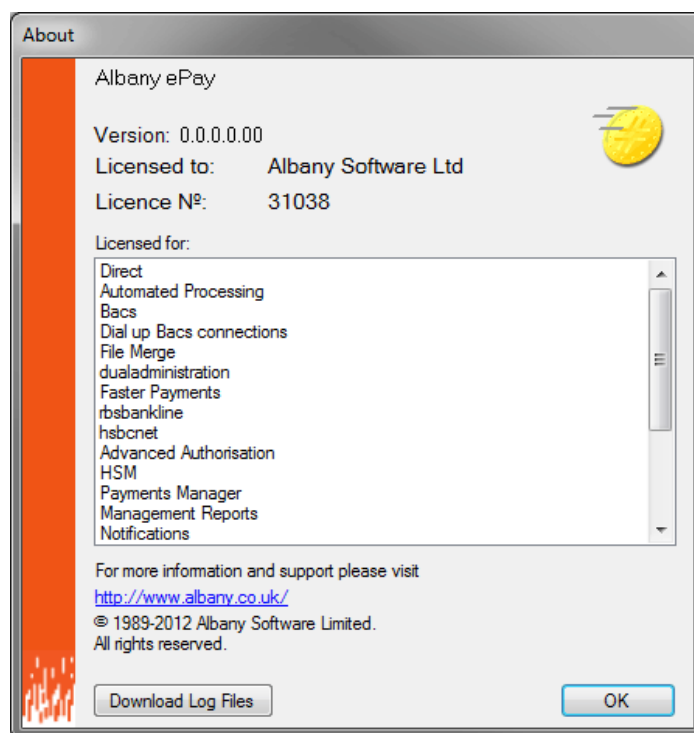
Over the years, Albany has developed a range of strategic relationships with key business partners, ensuring our solutions and services are of exceptional quality. Working with only the best, our partner network includes world renowned, well respected organisations which have chosen to partner with us, substantiating our reputation and credibility.

Albany Software is a leading authority in the e-business marketplace and has already enabled over 12,000 customers to benefit from process automation, increased efficiency and significant cost reductions. With a diverse customer base across all industry sectors and organisations of all sizes, our vast customer base is testimony to the broad appeal of our solutions.

For further information about Albany Software Limited, our eTransaction solutions, or to contact us, please visit us at [www.albany.co.uk](http://www.albany.co.uk).

### 2.1 About the application

To display the application *About* box, click  **About Albany ePAY** on the **Help** menu, from any toolbar. The application displays the following dialog box:



**Figure 1: About the application**

The list box shows which modules you currently have licensed.

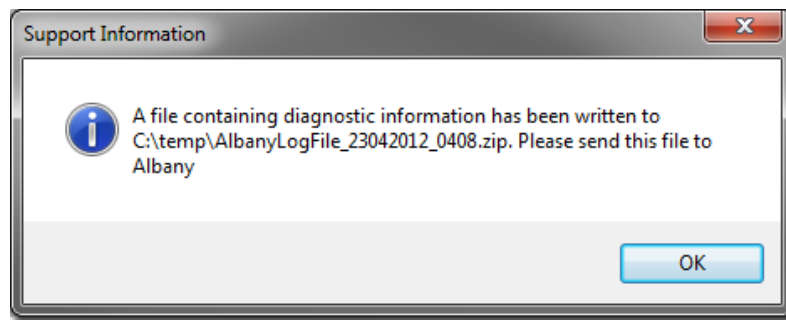
---

**!** Your licence may not necessarily include the same items shown in the above illustration.

---

Should you encounter a problem with the software, which causes you to have to contact Albany Support, you may be directed to download the log files for the application by clicking

**Download Log Files.** The log files are compressed and placed in a single zip file for ease of handling. Once they have been zipped the application displays the following dialog:



**Figure 2: Support information**

For your convenience, when you click **OK**, the application pops up a file Explorer window at the location where the log files have been compressed.

- 
- ! Log files are password protected as they contain sensitive data. You will not be able to open the file. When sent to Albany, a log file can be opened with strict attention to data security to assess the content for errors.
- 

## 2.2 Contact Albany Software Ltd

Albany support lines are operated during 08:00 to 20:00 Monday - Friday (excluding English Bank Holidays).

Tel: +44 (0) 1420 547640

Fax: +44 (0) 1420 547641

Email: [support@albany.co.uk](mailto:support@albany.co.uk)

For further information about Albany Software Limited, our eTransaction solutions, or to contact us, please visit us at [www.albany.co.uk](http://www.albany.co.uk).

## 3 Basic Concepts

This document will describe all the functionality available in Albany ePAY.

### 3.1 Editions and licensing

Albany ePAY is available in several different editions, including the small business edition and the mid-range edition. Some of the features documented here may be unavailable in the Small Business Edition, for example, Groups in administration. This will also vary depending on individual licensing for your product.

Some of the features are designed specifically for administrators who will be able to set up and maintain user accounts, payment profiles and other features of the software. Not all users will want or need to do so. For these users, some of the features may be hidden from view or merely inaccessible.

Once permissions have been set up for users and or groups, the fundamental view may vary depending on the permissions set for the current user. Paragraph 5.7 describes this in more detail.

Illustrations in this document are examples only.

### 3.2 Logging in

To log into Albany ePAY:

- Enter your user name and password into the **Username** and **Password** boxes on the *Log In* dialog, an example of which is shown in the following illustration:

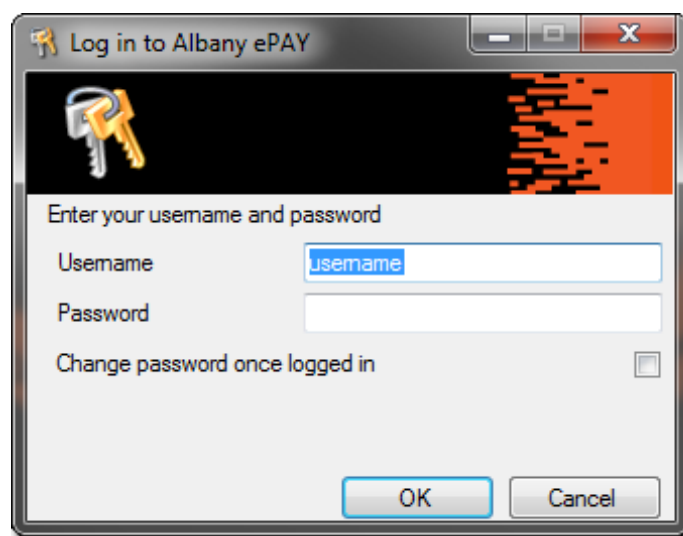


Figure 3: Log in

---

! The **Username** is not case sensitive but the **Password** is.

---

- Click the **OK** button to start the log in process. Albany ePAY validates your **Username** and **Password**, and if correct, opens the main screen
- If you place a check mark in the **Change password once logged in** check box, the application will prompt you to change your password once you have successfully logged in

- 
- ! When you log in for the first time, we advise you to change your password at the earliest opportunity for security purposes. The **Password** box is case-sensitive. Make sure you do not have Caps Lock on accidentally when attempting to enter your password. The **Username** box is not case-sensitive.
  - ! The system administrator can also set the password to expire and require you to choose another. In this case, the **Change password once logged in** check box will already be checked and disabled so that you must change your password. Rules for password selection will be set by your system administrator. Passwords are case-sensitive.
  - ! You will not be able to log in if the maximum number of licensed users has been exceeded (unless you are an administrator user). Consult your system administrator if you are unsure.
- 

If your **Username** and/or **Password** do not match any stored within the security database, you are given two more opportunities to log on before Albany ePAY closes. Click the **Cancel** button to close Albany ePAY without logging in.

Incorrectly entering your password three consecutive times may result in your user account being locked out. If this occurs contact your system supervisor. You may also be requested to change your password from time to time.

### 3.3 Close the application

When you wish to close the application, click the **X** button in the top right corner of the window. The main application window will close and you may also see the following message as connections to the Albany ePAY database are closed.

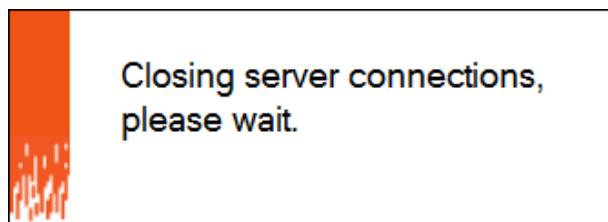


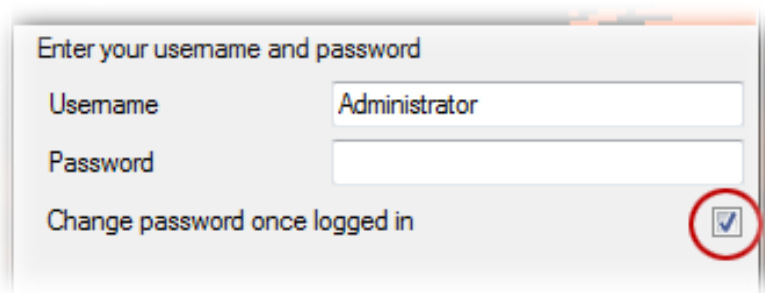
Figure 4: Logging off

### 3.4 Change password

The rules concerning your password will vary, depending on your system set up.

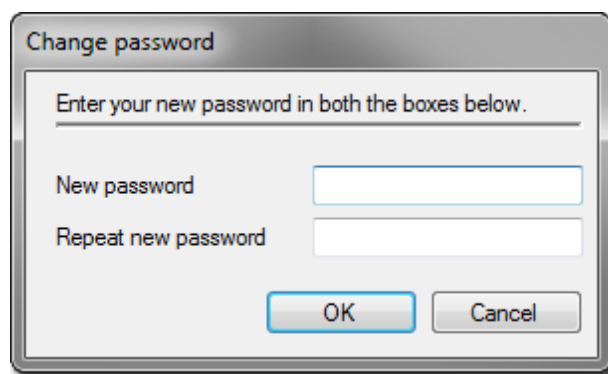
You may be required to change your password on a regular basis and this may include rules about the type of password and whether or not you are permitted to reuse an old password. You must check with your system administrator for details on the rules. If you are forced to change your password for any reason, including a routine change, at the point of login there will be a check mark against the **Change password one logged in** check box, highlighted in red in the following illustration. Once you have logged in with your old password you will be required to enter a new password in accordance with the system rules.



A login dialog box titled "Enter your username and password". It contains two text input fields: "Username" with the text "Administrator" and "Password" which is empty. Below these fields is a checkbox labeled "Change password once logged in" which is checked. A red circle highlights the checked checkbox.

**Figure 5: Forced password change**

You can also trigger, if your system permits, a manual change of password. To do this, click in the **Change password one logged in** check box at normal login. You should enter your old password to login as usual. You will then be required to enter the new password in the *Change password* dialog that will load immediately after login. You must repeat entry of the new password to avoid typing errors.

A dialog box titled "Change password". It contains a text label "Enter your new password in both the boxes below." followed by two text input fields: "New password" and "Repeat new password". At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: "OK" and "Cancel".

**Figure 6: Change password dialog**

Click **OK** once you have successfully entered the new password twice.

### 3.5 Interface

Albany ePAY is designed to maintain a simple look and feel. As with any window, Albany ePAY can be maximised, minimised or resized according to your requirements.

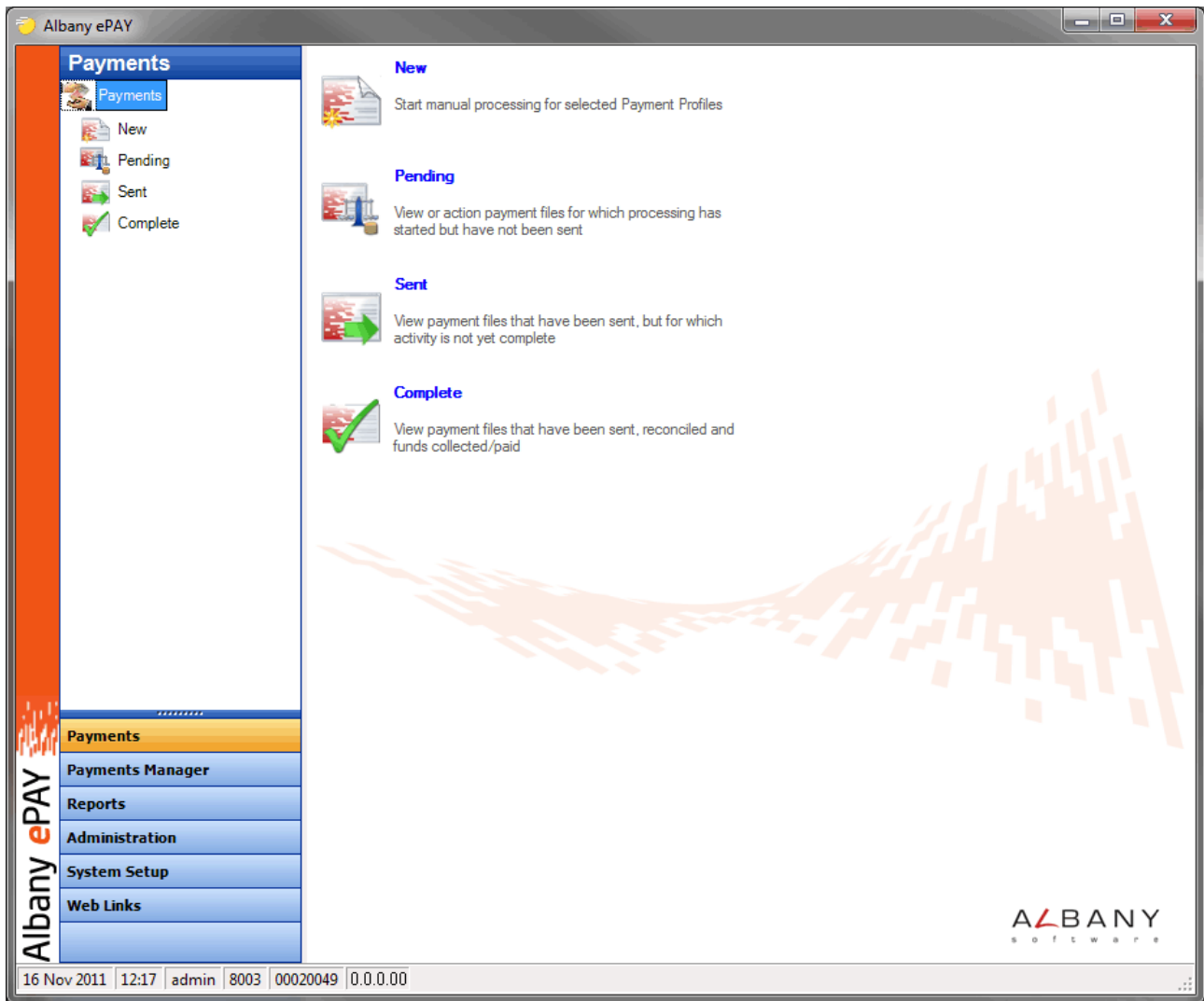
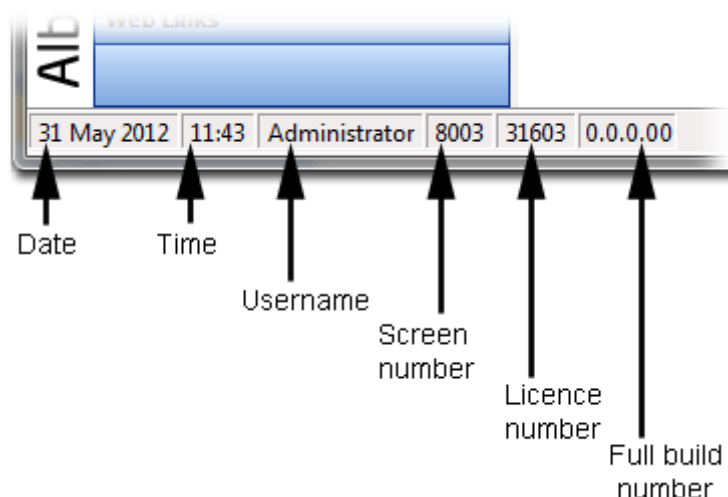


Figure 7: Application screen

### 3.5.1 Status bar information




The status bar is visible at the bottom of the main screen on the left. This displays the current date and time, the identity of the current user, the screen number, the licence number and the full build number. An example follows:





**Figure 8: Status bar information**

You may be asked to supply some of this information if you need to call Albany Support.

### 3.5.2 Hiding areas of the screen

To aid your view on some of the screens, it is possible to collapse areas of the screen to provide an improved working area. To hide the lower area of the screen, click  on the right at the top of the screen. The lower area will be hidden and the upper area expanded to fit the screen. You will see that the button has changed to . Click  to reveal the hidden area again.


The same technique is used to hide the upper pane by clicking  and  on the right of the lower area.

### 3.5.3 Views

Once a menu item is selected from the left or one of the icons on the right is used to open a specific screen, this screen will appear in the working area on the right. If this too, contains icons, you may be able to change the view to further suit your requirements. For example, where icons are displayed, the view can be changed by clicking the **Show As:** button to display **Thumbnails**, **Tiles**, **Icons**, **List** or **Details**. When displayed in **Details** view, any column can be sorted by clicking the button label at the top of the column. An arrow will display the direction of the sort order. Clicking the same button label will reverse the sort order. Relevant dates are sorted in chronological order. All other columns are sorted alphanumerically.

### 3.5.4 Navigation menu

The main navigation menu is shown on the left of the screen. At the bottom are the main functional areas and, depending on which of these is selected, the content is displayed directly above it.

You can adjust the width of the whole navigation area by moving the mouse pointer over the line that separates it from the right hand screen. The mouse pointer will change to show . When this icon is visible, click with the left mouse button and drag left or right to change the width. When ready, release the mouse button.

You can also adjust the proportions of the navigation areas, top and bottom, if you wish. Move the mouse pointer over the border between the menu panes until it changes as shown in the following illustration. Click and drag up or down to achieve the required change and release the mouse button.

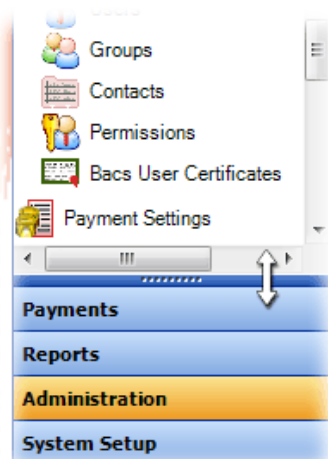


Figure 9: Menu resize

If the effect of this is to make any of the main menu items at the bottom disappear, they are replaced with one or more note icons, one for each hidden menu. Hover the mouse pointer over one of these. The mouse pointer will change to a hyperlink hand with a tooltip to tell you what the hidden menu is. Click the note icon to open that menu.

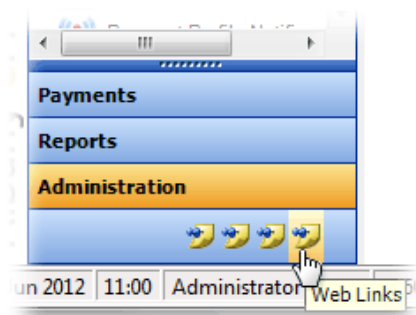



Figure 10: Hidden menus

### 3.6 Getting further help

Accessing online Help in Albany ePAY is simple. The toolbar for each screen within the application includes the  button which opens the **Help** menu. The **Help** menu offers several options.

- Click **Contents** to open *Help* at the welcome page from which you can browse to any topic you wish to learn about.
- Click **How Do I?** to access a list of likely tasks you may wish to carry out. Click any of the tasks listed to jump to the relevant help topic.
- Click **Search** to open the *Search* pane in online help.
- Click **Glossary** to open the *Glossary* pane in online help.
- Click **Keyword Index** to jump to the alphabetical index. Here you can type in the first character or characters of the topic you want to find. The list will filter in place.
- Click **Technical Support** to open the *Customer Support* page of the Albany website.
- Click **About Albany ePAY** to access version and licence information for the application.

## 3.7 Bacs 3 Day processing

The Bacs Electronic Funds Transfer (EFT) service operates on a three-day cycle. This is the minimum time scale required for a payment file to be processed and applied to the destination account. As a payment method, Albany ePAY refers to this method as 'Bacs'.

The three days involved in the cycle each have a name:

- Day 1: Input day
- Day 2: Processing day
- Day 3: Entry day

The following table demonstrates the timetable of events for the three-day cycle depending on the day on which the payment file is input:

Input day	Processing day	Entry day
Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday
Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday
Wednesday	Thursday	Friday
Thursday	Friday	Monday
Friday	Monday	Tuesday
Friday before a bank holiday Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday

### 3.7.1 Day 1: Input day

This is the day that the submission is received by Bacs. Currently, it must be received by 22:30 otherwise it will be rolled over to the next day. This is considered the first day of the clearing cycle if the processing day of the payment file is quoted as the next English bank working day. Payment files will be accepted up to 31 days before the intended Bacs processing date.

### 3.7.2 Day 2: Processing day

This is the day the banks/building societies process the payment instructions they have been sent from Bacs following the input day validation. Any payment instructions that have been input on the payment file with processing dates quoted for a future Bacs processing cycle will be held by Bacs on a separate submission file, pending the arrival of the appropriate processing day. It should be noted that it is the responsibility of Bacs to ensure that the output described above is received by the recipient banks/building societies in sufficient time for it to be distributed to their branches. However, it is the responsibility of the recipient bank/building society to ensure that the records are applied to the destination accounts on entry day (day three).

The shortest period of time in which the Bacs processing cycle can be completed is three consecutive British bank working days. These working days are known as processing days and exclude Saturdays, Sundays and British bank holidays. These exclusion days are known as non-processing days.

The window for processing runs, then, from Monday to Friday from the start of the working day until 23:30, meaning that, for example, submissions made after 23:30 on a working day would not begin processing until the following working day.

### 3.7.3 Day 3: Entry day

This is the day the payment instructions credit/debit the destination accounts. It should be noted that where the ultimate destination account is held at a third party organisation, for example, a building society that does not receive output direct from Bacs, it is the responsibility of the third party to ensure that the payment instructions are applied to accounts held by them. It is not the

responsibility of the bank/building society that receives the output on their behalf and then passes it to them.

### 3.7.4 Transaction limit

The transaction limit for a Bacs transfer is £999,999,999.99, however this amount will also be dependent on limits agreed on a per customer basis.

## 3.8 Faster Payments Service

The Faster Payments Service (FPS) enables electronic payments, made over the Internet, to be processed in hours rather than days. This service runs alongside the existing Bacs three-day service. This payment method operates a one-day cycle, but may process in as little as two hours from submission and is also referred to as Faster Payments.

---

! Use of Faster Payments or any other payment method using Albany ePAY is licensed separately.

---

### 3.8.1 Processing period

It is possible to send payments on a 24 hour basis although you should check with your bank when transactions occur close to midnight on any given day. This operates seven days a week, excluding British bank holidays.

### 3.8.2 Procedure

Transactions are processed into Albany ePAY and a decision is made regarding whether the transaction file may be processed by Faster Payments or whether it needs to be sent through the three-day service. Once the decision is made that the transactions can be sent via Faster Payments, a date (normally today) is selected. If it is not possible to process the task via Faster Payments, the three-day service is selected and an appropriate date set for the task to be processed.

Assuming the task can be processed via Faster Payments; it will pass through all the normal processing stages and be submitted to be with Bacs by no later than 23:00 on the day of submission.

The task is submitted through the transaction to Faster Payments. Once this point is reached, the transaction cannot be cancelled.

The service sends the payment to the receiving bank where the destination account is held, after checking that all the relevant details are included and properly formatted, and then debits the sending bank. Once the receiving bank has received the transaction, it will check that it is for a valid account, and will send a message back to Faster Payments that it has accepted the payment (or, if there is an error, that it has rejected the payment). On confirmation that all is correct at the receiving bank, Faster Payments credits the receiving bank with the funds, and notifies the sender that the transaction has been completed successfully.

The receiving bank credits the destination account with the money received, and the recipient should be able to access funds within two hours of payment receipt. However, it must be understood that at any stage, either the sender or receiving bank may carry out additional checks on transactions, which could delay a small number of payments.

### 3.8.3 Transaction limit

There is a maximum limit placed on the value of each payment sent through Faster Payments with the initial maximum value for standing orders and for individual payments set to £100,000 per item per day. All banks have to accept incoming payments of up to £100,000. At the time of writing, most banks will process sending transactions of up to £100,000 although there may still be some that limit this to £10,000.

### 3.8.1 Banks

Using direct corporate access (DCA) to transfer directly to Bacs using FPS can only be conducted directly by Barclays. However, other banks support their own methods for this. Two examples of these are described in paragraph 3.9.

## 3.9 Other payment methods

Other payment methods may be available, depending on individual requirements; the following example describes one such alternative.

---

! Each is individually licensable and includes specific permissions so that if a user does not have the permission assigned, that user will not be able to select the payment method.

---

### 3.9.1 RBS Bankline

Royal Bank of Scotland customers may use a specific method called RBS Bankline. Albany ePAY users submit the special bulk Faster Payments files to RBS Bankline by exporting a payment file from their chosen accounts or payroll package into Albany ePAY for processing. This is separately licensed for Albany ePAY

RBS Bankline is a Faster Payments type, designed by the Royal Bank of Scotland, but holds its own set of rules for each transaction in the file as follows:

- The number of transactions per file is limited to 4,000.

---

! If this number is exceeded, a new file will be generated automatically for the additional transactions. This additional file will have a unique name.

---

- All payments must be credits.
- Payments cannot exceed £100,000.
- Values must be in sterling.
- Processing is for the current date or the next working day.
- Input files must be in the correct RBS Bankline format.

When the file is processed, Albany ePAY validates the file to ensure that every bank account number and sort code is valid and in addition checks the rules listed above. Once successfully validated and confirmed, Albany ePAY produces a CSV file which is then exported for submission via RBS Bankline.

---

! RBS Bankline does not use a SUN in the normal manner, but compiles a payment file which is validated and then sent to the RBS Bankline system for processing.

---

### 3.9.2 HSBC Export

As with RBS Bankline, HSBC offers their own alternative route for Faster Payments. The following rules apply for setup and validation, separately licensed for Albany ePAY:

- The export format can be the STD18 output that is normally transmitted to Voca.
- The maximum number of transactions that an HSBC file can contain is 32,000.
- There are no specific cut-off times or maximum transaction values for HSBC, therefore the standard faster payment scheme values can apply (currently 24/7 processing hours and £100,000 maximum value).
- The HSBC system does not support 'next day' payments.

- When licensed, the payment method appears in Albany ePAY *About* dialog and in the *Payment Profiles* screens as *HSBCnet*.
- The payment date must be 'today'.
- Validation rules are the same as for Faster Payments.
- HSBCnet does not use a SUN in the normal manner, so this information will be displayed as N/A in all screens that apply.
- No signing is required at any of the configured authorisation stages for an HSBCnet payment.

When the file is processed, Albany ePAY validates the file to ensure that every bank account number and sort code is valid and in addition checks the rules. Once successfully validated and confirmed, Albany ePAY produces a file which is then exported for submission to HSBCnet.

## 3.10 Bacs payment authorisation

In order that payments can be security checked prior to submission to Bacs, one of two security options is permitted: Both are based on Public Key Information (PKI) which includes a digital certificate and signature.

### 3.10.1 Smart Cards

The Smart Card based security process requires the user to insert the card into a reader and key in the PIN each time a digital signature is required. For this edition of Albany ePAY, it is the most likely method for authorisation.

Smart Cards are issued by Bacs with an associated Personal Identification Number (PIN), usually via a sponsoring bank. Currently, one Smart Card can be used for multiple SUNs, but a separate Smart Card will be required for a different sponsoring bank. One card reader can read all cards. Bacs has developed interoperability standards to facilitate this.

Smart Cards are generally issued to individual users within an organisation, and for security purposes, they must not be shared amongst users.

Smart Cards may have a lifespan of up to five years. Sponsoring banks will usually issue their Smart Cards and digital certificates with a lifespan of three years.

The Smart Card reader is attached directly to the workstation at which the payments are to be authorised.

### 3.10.2 Hardware Security Modules

The Hardware Security Module (HSM) provides an alternative to Smart Cards and Smart Card readers for those organisations looking to automate the process of authorisation and/or submission. Organisations that have a large numbers of payment clearances to make every day can opt to utilise the *lights out* technology supported by Albany ePAY.

The HSM solution utilises a piece of hardware that connects to or goes inside a computer system. It is used to hold secret keys and other security related material. It can be accessed in a secure and controlled way to produce digital signatures. HSMs are supplied with different levels of security to prevent unauthorised access to the secret material. It allows security process actions to be automated and therefore it is typically used in a mainframe or server environment for lights out or unattended operation or where a remote and/or secure computer environment is required and physical access is limited.

As with Smart Cards, a digital signature is still required to sign files and to authorise submissions; although they are no longer stored and accessed from a Smart Card, but rather a certificate store. As a result, unattended operations are governed by stringent security requirements in order to guarantee the security of the submission in an automated environment. One of these requirements is that all cryptographic keys and digital signatures **MUST** be protected in tamper-resistant hardware, certified by Bacs for operations.



- 
- ! The HSM use with Albany ePAY is not included in the standard licence, but is an optional extra. If your organisation would like to consider this, please contact Albany Software Ltd for further information (see paragraph 2.2).
  - ! Where automation is required for digital signing, either in respect of payments or reports, an HSM must be installed.
- 

### 3.11 Communication

In order for Albany ePAY to run correctly, connections are made through the internet on a regular basis. As this may impact on performance when using anti-virus software, the communication method has been adapted to avoid issues. Anti-virus protection is maintained while the communication channel through which Albany ePAY operates remains clear.

## 4 System Setup

The **System Setup** area of the navigation menu provides access to the various functions involved with setting up the application. This includes:

- Audit Reports – paragraph 4.1
- End of Day Configuration – paragraph 4.2
- Purging and Archiving – paragraph 4.3
- Bacs Connections – paragraph 4.4
- System Settings – paragraph 4.5
- Dual Administration Settings – paragraph 4.6
- System Maintenance – paragraph 4.7

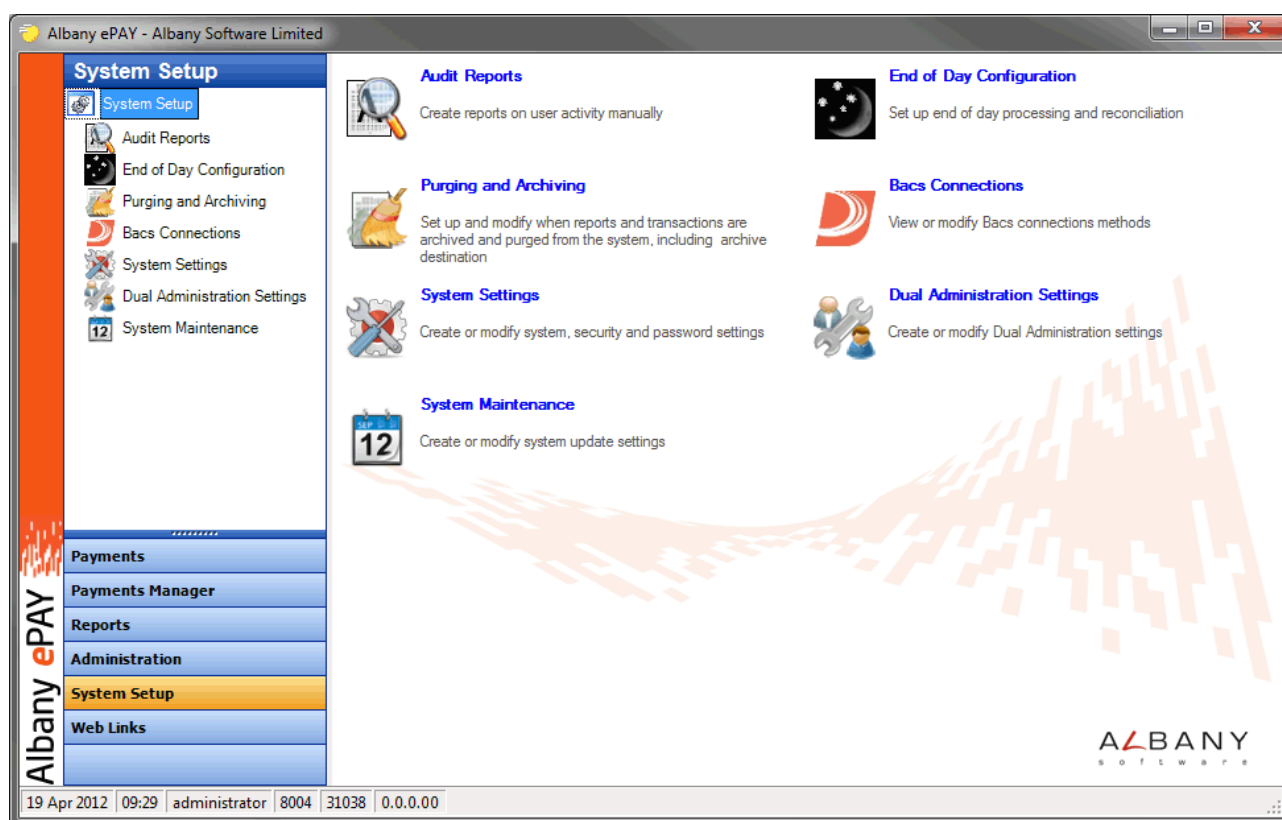


Figure 11: System Setup screen

### 4.1 Audit Reports


Audit activity is critical to the operation of any software solution, ensuring that all user activity is recorded so that a log can be kept of who did what and when. This information can then be used by key employees in an organisation to investigate specific instances of activity, for example, tracing who was responsible for sending a payment for the wrong amount. The information can also be used in an overall view of activity to minimise security risks. Prompt identification of repeat authorisation by the same employee so that steps can be taken to reduce risk by spreading the authorisation activity between different senior users.

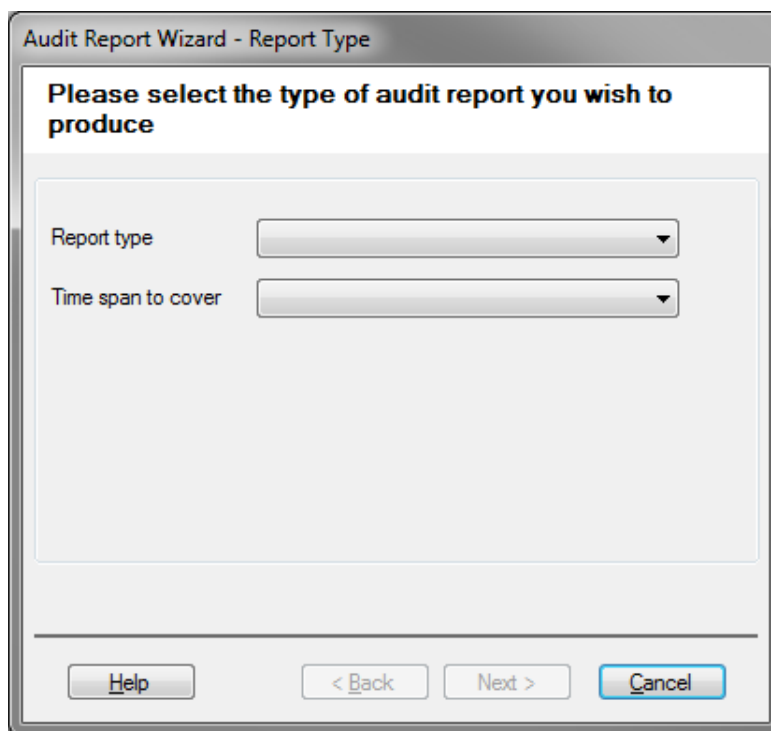
Albany ePAY includes specific rules that govern the storage of relevant audit data and provides a user interface from which the manual printing, exporting and emailing of the information can be

configured. It provides a mechanism by which this data can be purged and archived with a log of the purging and archiving activity – see paragraph 4.3 for more information.

In order to set up the auditing feature, the current user must have access permissions. See paragraph 5.7.

Select **System Setup** from the navigation area and choose **Audit Reports**.

1. To set up a new report, in the *Audit Reports* screen, click  on the toolbar; the wizard will load.
2. Click the arrow to the right of **Report type** and select the report type you wish to create. Choices may include:
  - Complete
  - Processing
  - Administration
  - System Access



**Figure 12: Audit Report Wizard – Report Type**

Once you have chosen the report type, click the arrow to the right of **Time span to cover**. Select from:

- *Today only*
- *Yesterday only*
- *This week*
- *Last week*
- *This month*
- *Last month*

When you have made your choices, click the **Next >** button which is now enabled.

In the second stage of the wizard you select one or more users who will be subject(s) of the reports by clicking in the corresponding check box to the left of the user log in name. This allows the report recipient to see which users have been conducting which aspects of work.



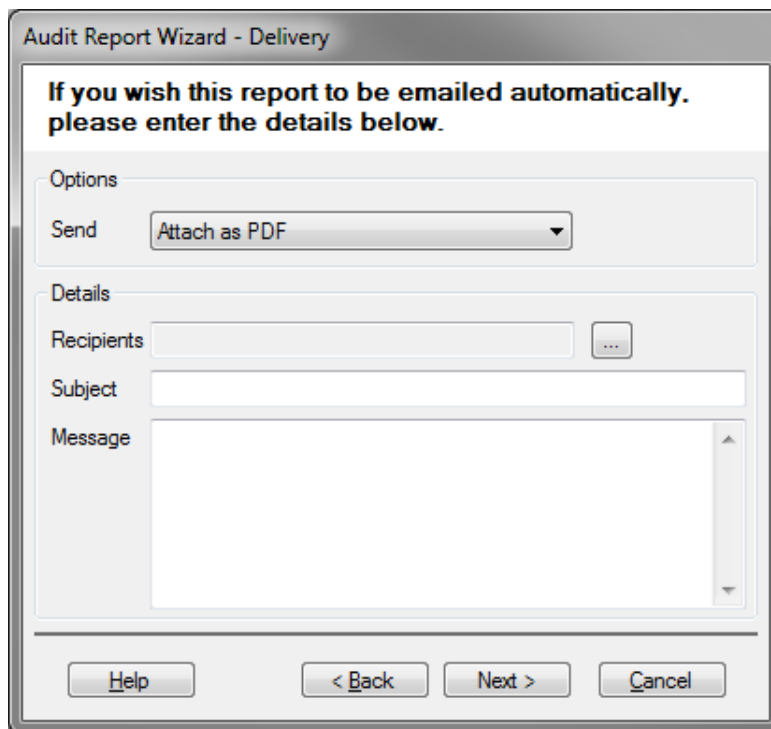
**Figure 13: Audit Report Wizard - Users**

3. Click **Next >**. You will now specify if the report is to be emailed automatically to one or more specific users or user groups. Select the format for the report by clicking the arrow to the right of **Send** and selecting from the options shown.

---

! If you wish to skip this step, click **Next >** without making any selections.


---

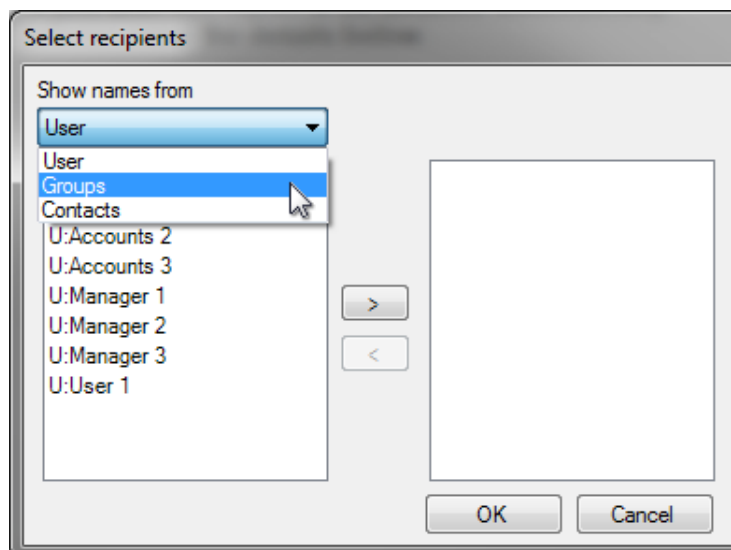


The 'Audit Report Wizard - Delivery' dialog box contains the following elements:

- Title Bar:** Audit Report Wizard - Delivery
- Instructions:** If you wish this report to be emailed automatically, please enter the details below.
- Options Section:**
  - Send:** A dropdown menu currently set to 'Attach as PDF'.
- Details Section:**
  - Recipients:** A text input field followed by a button with three dots (the ellipsis button).
  - Subject:** A text input field.
  - Message:** A large text area for composing the email body.
- Buttons:** Help, < Back, Next >, and Cancel.

Figure 14: Audit Report Wizard – Delivery

4. To add or remove users/groups/contacts from the **Recipients**, click  to the right of the **Recipients** box and select from the dialog provided.



The 'Select recipients' dialog box contains the following elements:

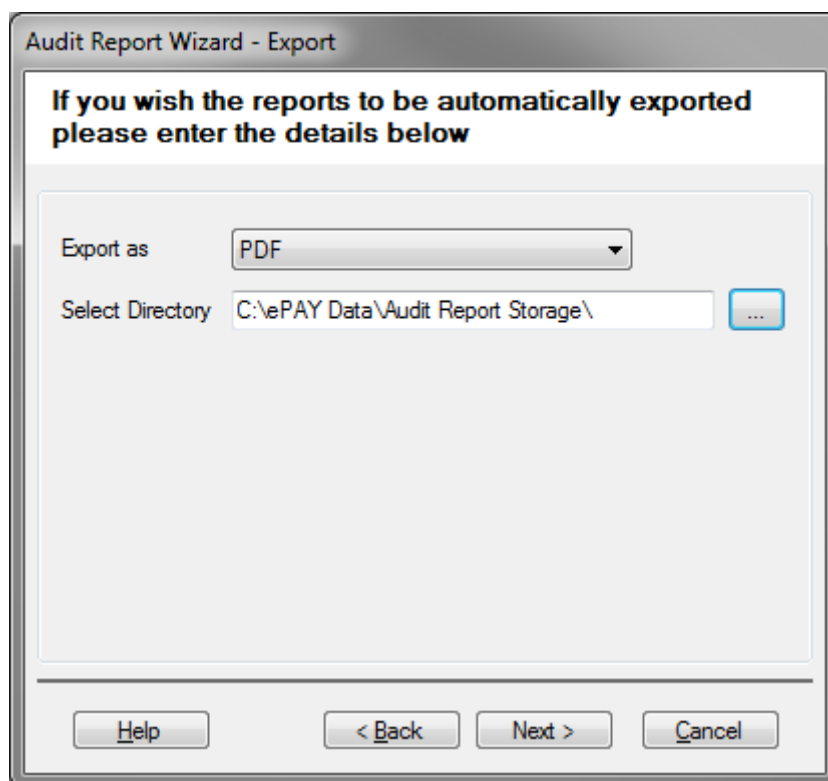
- Title Bar:** Select recipients
- Show names from:** A dropdown menu with 'User' selected. The dropdown list is open, showing 'User', 'Groups', and 'Contacts'.
- Left List:** A list of names including 'U:Accounts 2', 'U:Accounts 3', 'U:Manager 1', 'U:Manager 2', 'U:Manager 3', and 'U:User 1'.
- Navigation Buttons:** '>' (Add) and '<' (Remove) buttons between the two lists.
- Right List:** An empty box for the selected recipients.
- Buttons:** OK and Cancel.

Figure 15: Select recipients


Click the arrow to the right of the Show names from box to choose from individual Users, Groups or Contacts. Click > to add selected names to the box on the right. These will be the recipients. To remove a name from the recipients list, select the name from the list on the right and click <. When ready, click **OK**.

If you are setting up emailing of reports, you should provide a **Subject** for the email in the box provided. You do not need to add a **Message** unless you consider that it would be helpful.

- Click **Next >**. This step of the wizard facilitates the setting up of an automatic export to a specific location.



**Figure 16: Audit Report Wizard – Export location**

Choose the format for the report by clicking the arrow to the right of **Export as**. Click  to the right of **Select Directory** to open a *Directory Browser* dialog. Select the required location and click **OK**.

---

! To skip this step, click **Next >** without making any selections.


---

- Click **Next >**.
- Finally, type a unique and descriptive name for the report and click **Finish**.

The report, based on your specifications, will now load on screen at which point it can be printed, emailed or exported manually, if required.

Click **X** to close the report.

The new report is now listed in the *Audit Reports* screen.

At any time, existing reports can be opened by double clicking the name or . Without opening a selected report it can also be printed, emailed or exported using the toolbar buttons in the *Audit Reports* screen.

## 4.2 End of Day Configuration

To access the *End of Day Configuration* screen, select **System Setup** from the navigation menu and click **End of Day Configuration**. This screen allows you to make changes to the timing of the processes which occur at the end of the business day. An example of this screen is shown in the following illustration:

The screenshot shows two configuration panels. The top panel, titled 'End of Day Configuration', contains a label 'Time at which to start the end of day processes', a spinner box set to '23:59', and a 'Save' button. Below this, it states 'Run every working day at 23:59, starting on 19 Dec 2011.' and 'On public holidays don't run.' The bottom panel, titled 'Report Collection', contains a label 'How long (in days) a Live or Full Test submission remains at 'Collect Reports' status awaiting retrieval of the associated Input File(s) before moving to a status of 'Complete'', a spinner box set to '0', and a 'Save' button.

Figure 17: End of day configuration

In this screen you can set the **Time at which to start the end of day processes** using the spinner provided. Normally, this time will be at the latest time before midnight at the end of a working day, to allow for all processes for that day to be conducted. The date is automatically set from the current day. Click the **Save** button to save the changes.

#### 4.2.1 Report Collection

This section allows you to specify the period for which Live or Full Test submission report data is held before transfer to *Complete* status. Use the spinner arrows to set a required value from 0 to 30 days and click **Save**. The default period is set to 30 days.

### 4.3 Purging and Archiving

Navigate to **System Setup, Purging and Archiving**. An example of the specific area of the screen is shown in the following illustration:

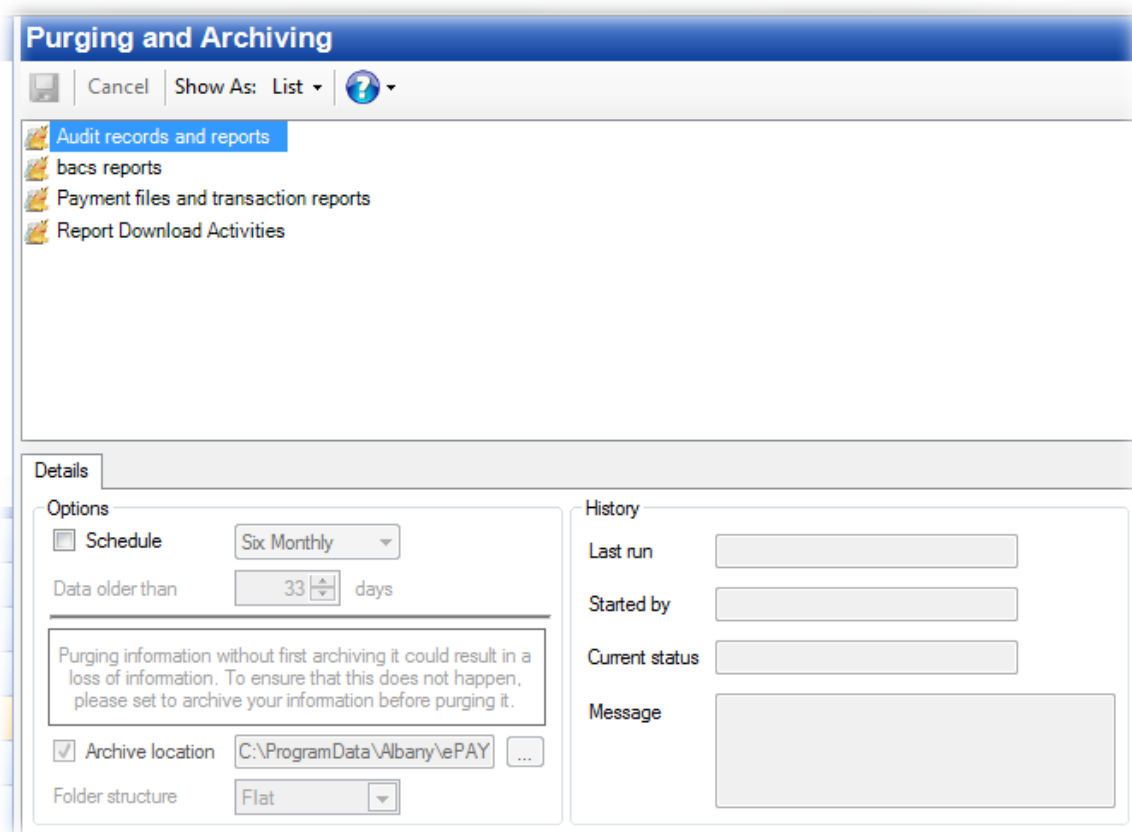


Figure 18: Purging and archiving

There are several reports listed in the illustration above, but you will notice that, for the selected report, most of the **Details** tab at the bottom is disabled. That is because a schedule for purging and archiving has not yet been set.

#### 4.3.1 Set up a schedule

To set up a schedule, in the **Details** tab, click in the **Schedule** check box on the left. This enables the rest of the form for you to set up the schedule.

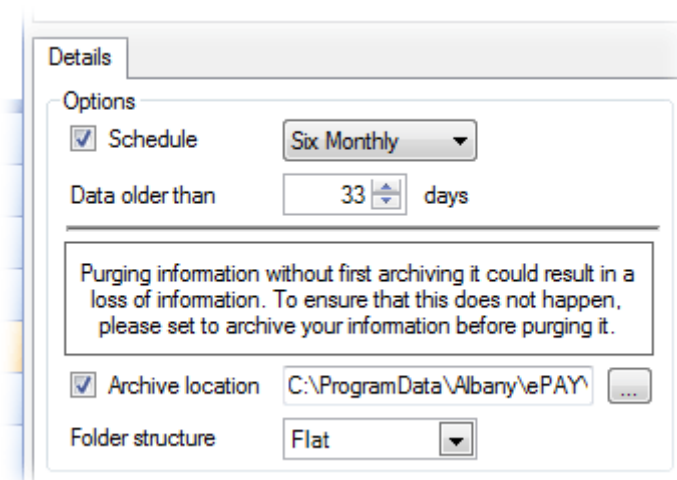
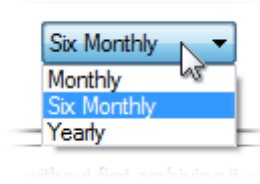


Figure 19: Purging and archiving schedule



### 1. Schedule Period


When an archive location has been set, choose the schedule interval, as shown in the following illustration:



**Figure 20: Schedule period**

Now specify which data should be purged and archived at that interval. Use the spinner to set **Data older than xx days**.

### 2. Archive

Notice the warning message displayed. Normally, a default location for the archive is already set, but if not, ensure that the **Archive Location** check box is checked and click  to the right to browse to a suitable archive location. You can also specify if the archive is to be in a flat format or a tree format. If you are not sure which it should be, check with your system administrator.

Once you are satisfied with the settings, click .

## 4.4 Bacs Connections

Select **System Setup, Bacs Connections** to access the *Bacs Connections* screen where your connection to Bacs is defined. By default it is supplied with correct settings for both Bacs 3-day Service and the Faster Payments Service and should not need any maintenance.

### 4.4.1 Default connection

The default connection setting is for Internet Fixed. If you need to change this to the Extranet Fixed option, select it and click ✓. The **Default** column will reflect the change.

The screenshot shows the 'Bacs Connections' window. At the top, there's a title bar 'Bacs Connections' and a toolbar with 'Cancel', 'Show As: List', a green checkmark, and a help icon. Below the toolbar is a table with two columns: 'Name' and 'Default'. The table lists two connections: 'Extranet Fixed' (selected) and 'Internet Fixed' (with 'Yes' in the Default column). Below the table are two tabs: 'Details' and 'Settings'. The 'Settings' tab is active, showing fields for 'Connection Name' (Extranet Fixed), 'Bacs 3 day URL' (https://paymentservices.extranet.bacs.co.uk/submissions/submission-webapp/), 'Bacs 3 day Package ID' (SFP4220), 'Faster Payments URL' (https://iplservices.voca.com/submissions/submission-webapp/), and 'Faster Payments Package ID' (SFP5625). There is also a checkbox for 'Enable communications logging' which is checked.

Name	Default
Extranet Fixed	
Internet Fixed	Yes

Details Settings

Connection Name: Extranet Fixed

Bacs 3 day URL: https://paymentservices.extranet.bacs.co.uk/submissions/submission-webapp/

Bacs 3 day Package ID: SFP4220

Faster Payments URL: https://iplservices.voca.com/submissions/submission-webapp/

Faster Payments Package ID: SFP5625

☒ Enable communications logging

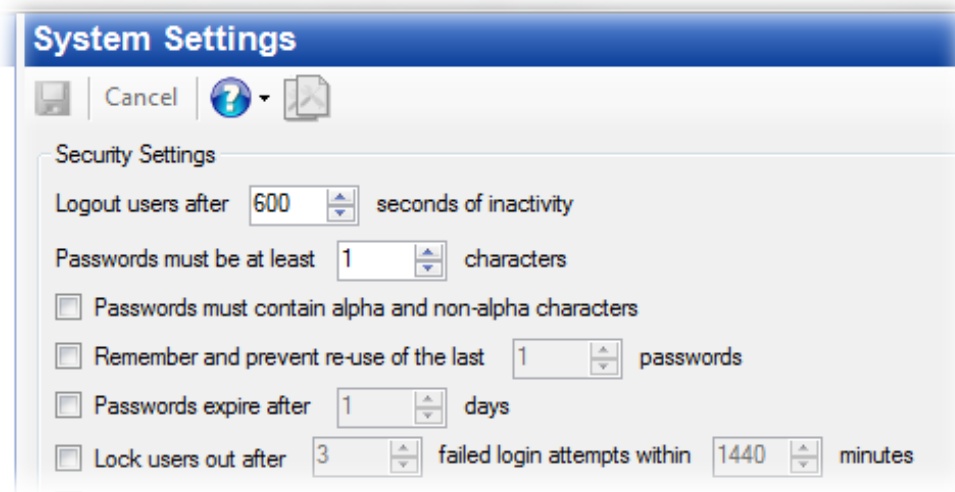
Figure 21: Bacs connections

### 4.4.2 Proxy settings

Depending upon whether your organisation uses a proxy server to connect to the Internet, you may have to enter this information in the **Settings** tab of the screen. If not already set up, your system administrator will be able to furnish you with the relevant information for this to happen.

## 4.5 System Settings

To access the *System Settings* screen, navigate to **System Setup** and click **System Settings**.



**Figure 22: System Settings**

The **System Settings** information includes:

Setting	Description
<b>Logout users after XXX seconds of inactivity</b>	The value here specifies the maximum period of inactivity in the program before the user is required to re-enter his/her login password. The maximum number of seconds that can be set is 3600.
<b>Passwords must be at least XX characters</b>	This option specifies the requirements for the minimum number of characters required in a user password. The maximum number that can be specified is 100.
<b>Passwords must contain alpha and non-alpha characters</b>	Check this box to ensure that users must include both alphabetical and non-alphabetical characters in a new password.
<b>Remember and prevent re-use of the last X passwords</b>	Check this box if you wish to restrict reuse of previous passwords. Specify the number of passwords that cannot be reused in the box provided. The maximum number of passwords that can be held in history for this purpose is 100.
<b>Passwords expire after X days</b>	Check this box to specify password expiry for all passwords. The number of days before password expiry is indicated in the appropriate box. For example, if all user passwords are to be changed monthly for security reasons, you can specify this here, normally by checking the box and setting 31 days as the expiry period.
<b>Lock users out after X failed login attempts within YYY minutes</b>	Check this box to prevent possible fraudulent access attempts. Specify the number of allowable attempts and the period in which these failures may occur. So for example, this could be set to a maximum of five attempts in a thirty minute period. If the user fails to login according to these specifications, the account will lock and the user will need to contact the system administrator to reset the lock.

## 4.6 Dual Administration Settings

Dual Administration is a feature of Albany ePAY that adds an additional layer of security by requiring two administrative users to confirm specific administrative changes to the system. The areas of focus are predominantly those that may lead to fraud being perpetrated if one person was able to act independently, for example: using the system to send payments to themselves or associates, thus bypassing company security/payment authorisation standards.

---

! This feature is not normally available in the Small Business Edition.

---

In addition, dual administration provides extra protection to the users/company by ensuring that accidental and potentially costly mistakes are averted and thereby helps to prevent malicious activity that may have recovery and reputation costs.

#### 4.6.1 Enabling

Dual Administration can only be enabled for one or more of the administrative areas when there are:

- Two users with System Settings permissions
- Two users with administrative permissions to the area(s) being enabled

For example, if Dual Administration is being enabled for User Settings, then there must be two users with Administration permissions and two users with System Settings permissions for the pending change to be saved. If it is being enabled for System Settings only, then only the two users with System Settings rights are required.

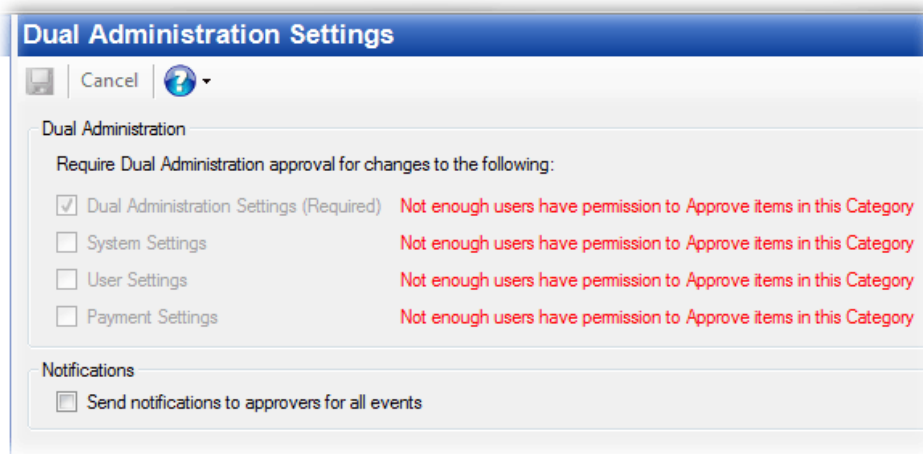


Figure 23: Dual Administration limited approvers

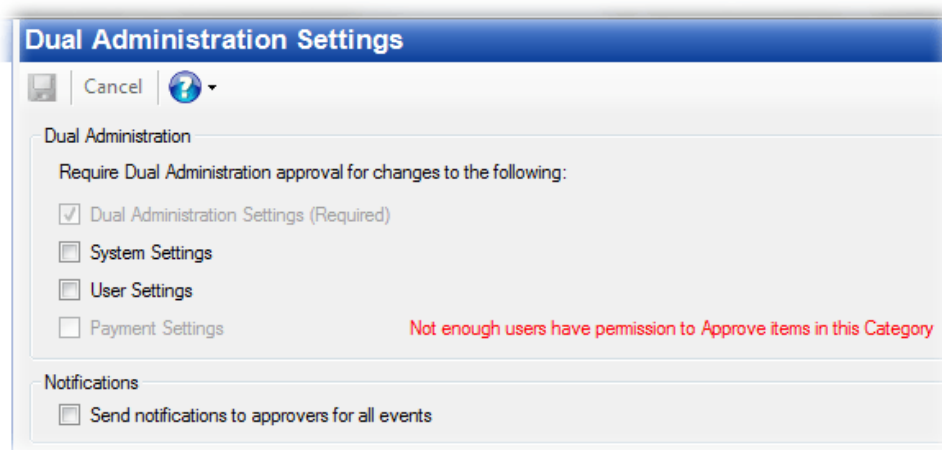
If licensed, the **Dual Administration Settings (Required)** box is checked automatically, but by default, none of the individual settings are enabled. As shown in the above illustration, if insufficient users are enabled for dual administration, a relevant message is displayed to that effect to the right of the appropriate checkbox(es). Before proceeding, at least one additional user must be given appropriate permissions, as described above.

---

! Administrative permissions are described in paragraph 5.7.5.

---

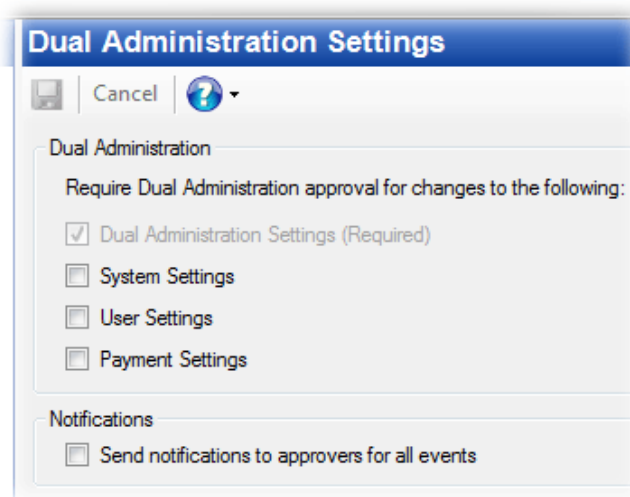
In the following illustration, there are sufficient users with permissions to set Dual Administration for System Settings and User Settings, but not for Payment Settings:



**Figure 24: Payment Settings unavailable**

Once sufficient users have permissions to approve in one or more categories, you will be able to select which of the settings to apply the Dual Administration feature to.

The potential areas of control fall under three categories as follows, with a checkbox supplied for each. Check the boxes for those to be enabled.



**Figure 25: Dual Administration settings for selection**

**1. System Settings**


These settings are generally related to security.

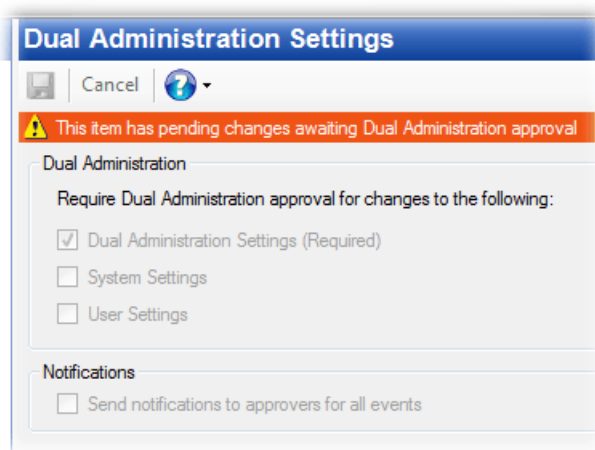
**2. User Settings**

This area covers users, groups and permissions.

**3. Payment Settings**

This area covers all elements relating to modification of payment data.

Once Dual Administration is applied and one or more of the settings checkboxes has been checked, when  is clicked, all the checkboxes are disabled and a warning appears at the top of the screen until another user has accepted/rejected the changes.



**Figure 26: Awaiting approval**

Once the change is accepted or rejected by another authorised user, the checkboxes are re-enabled and the warning bar is removed.

#### 4.6.2 Disabling

To disable a single feature of dual administration, remove the checkmark from the feature to be disabled.

It is not possible to disable Dual Administration for any administrative area while there are pending changes in progress for that area.

If dual administration is enabled (for any of the administrative areas) it is not possible to remove System Settings permissions from a user or group, or delete a user or group with this permission if doing so would leave a single user with the System Settings permission.

---

! User permissions can be removed explicitly, by changing user permission directly or implicitly by removing the user from a group with that permission.

---

#### 4.6.3 Notifications

In order that each request for confirmation of changes is dealt with as quickly as possible, you can specify that authorised users are notified. To activate this feature, check the **Send notifications to approvers for all events** checkbox.

---

! If notifications are required, each of the authorised users must have a valid email address registered in Albany ePAY in user properties, described on page 37.

---

### 4.7 System Maintenance

The System Maintenance area allows you to configure the schedule and manually run the following features:

- The verification database for bank sort codes and account numbers
- Automatic backup of the ePAY database
- Bacs non processing days

To view the existing schedule, navigate to **System Setup, System Maintenance**. The *System Maintenance* screen will display on the right.

The screenshot shows the 'System Maintenance' window. At the top, there is a title bar and a toolbar with 'Cancel' and 'Show As: List' (with a dropdown arrow). Below this is a table of tasks:

	Last Run	Last Run	Last Status	Next Run
12 Bank Account Validation	1/03/2012	11:27:...	Task Started	12/03/2012 23:5...
12 Database Backup	1/03/2012	11:24:...	Task registered...	
12 Non Processing Days	1/03/2012	11:26:...	Task Completed	28/03/2012 22:0...

Below the table is a 'Details' section. It has a 'Current Data' tab. The details table shows:

Data	Last Updated
Sort Code Database	29/11/2010
Sort Code Substitutions	22/07/2009
Modulus Data	28/10/2009

On the right side of the details pane, there are two buttons: 'Update Now' and 'Schedule'.

**Figure 27: System Maintenance**

Updates included are displayed at the top of the window. You can change the view using the selector at the top of the screen. *Details* view displays the details of the most recent update with columns to indicate the name of the schedule, the date it was last run (based on the updated figures from the respective databases), the Last Status of the task and the date and time on which the task is scheduled to run automatically, if applicable.

The lower area of the form displays the **Details** of the task selected in the upper pane. In Figure 27 this applies to Bank Account Validation. The task has been started, but is still in progress.

#### 4.7.1 Bank Account Validation

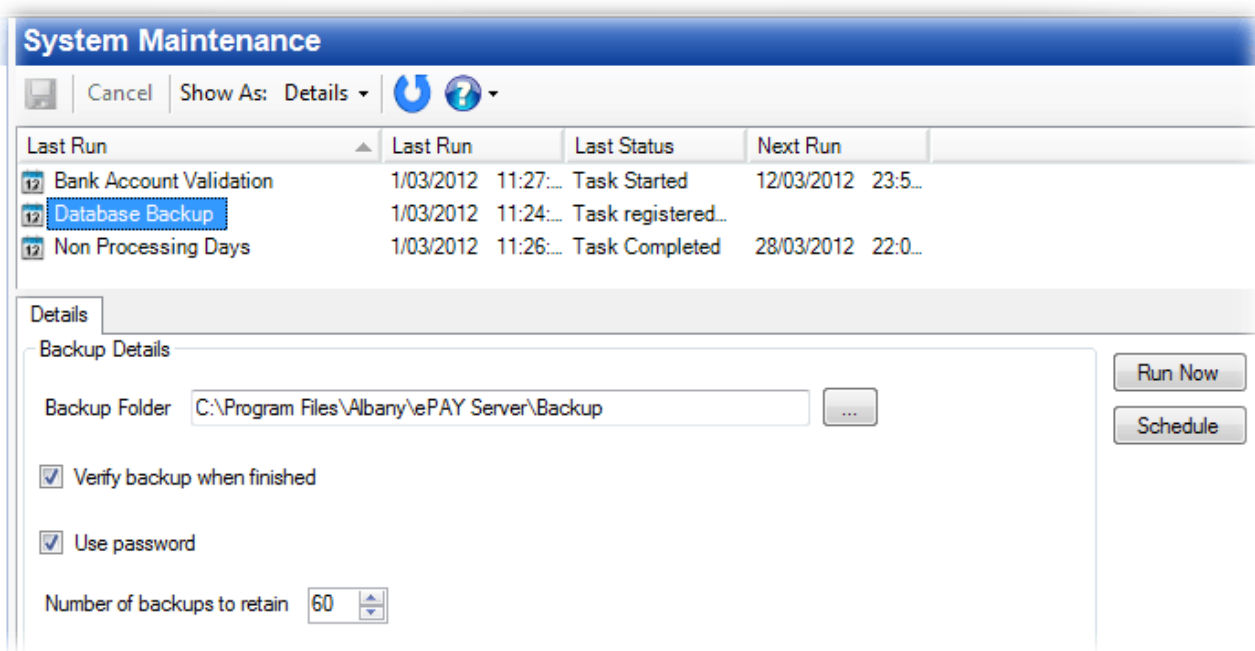
When payment data is entered into Albany ePAY, normally in a payment input file, the sort codes and account numbers are validated against a database of valid information. As new sort codes and account numbers are added, the database becomes disconnected with valid information. For this reason Albany ePAY needs to connect and update this database.

The default Bank Account Validation schedule for new and upgrade installations is as follows:

- Set to Active
- Recurs once every week
- Set to the Day of the week from the day on which the software was installed/upgrade
- Runs automatically on non-working days
- Time normally set to the following:
  - Small Business Edition – between 12:00 and 02:00
  - Mid-range or above – between 11:00 and 06:00
- Start date – the date at the time of the installation/upgrade
- End date – none

#### 4.7.2 Automatic backup

System databases can be backed up automatically on a schedule or manually within Albany ePAY. In the upper pane of the *System Maintenance* screen, select *Database Backup*. The lower pane **Details** will change to reflect your selection.



**Figure 28: Database Backup**

You will see that, by default, a schedule has not been setup, indicated by the lack of information shown in the **Next Run** column in the upper pane.

Backup details that you can specify are:

- **Backup Folder**

The location in which backups are stored. You can leave the default path or click and browse to a different location, if required. The default path is that which is expected by ePAY, but if the ePAY server and the SQL server are not in the same server location, this path must be changed to the location that SQL server will expect.

In addition, backups are run as a NETWORK SERVICE. For this reason it is imperative that the NETWORK SERVICE user is able to read and write to the backup location. If you experience any problems with backup, contact your system administrator who will be able to ensure that this access is enabled.

- **Verify backup when finished**

This is a SQL process, checked by default. It is recommended that backups are always verified for structural integrity to ensure that they can be restored.

- **Use password**

In the event of a requirement to restore a backup, this password will be required. It is predefined by Albany support and is available to them when the restore takes place. Albany recommends the use of the password in order to protect the confidential content of the database.

- **Number of backups to retain**

A new, uniquely named file will be created for each backup operation so this option will control how many of those files are kept by the system. For example, if the value is set to 10 then when the 10th file is created, the oldest of the backups created (determined by the date or time of the file) will be deleted.

The default number of backups to retain is 60; however, any number between 1 and 999 can be specified.



To run a backup manually, click the **Run Now** button. If all the settings are correct, the backup will proceed. A message will inform you that the process has started and the **Last Status** column in the upper pane will change to *Task Started*. Once the backup is complete, the **Last Status** column will state *Task Completed*.

To create a backup schedule, click the **Schedule** button. Information on setting up the schedule is provided in paragraph 4.7.4.

### 4.7.3 Non Processing Days

This provides a list of dates when Bacs processing cannot take place via download and is visible in the relevant tab. This information is automatically updated on installation or upgrading of the Albany ePAY software. At the time of the installation/upgrade, the scheduling is set up for the standard defaults. These are:

- Set to Active
- Recurs once a month
- Set to the Day of the month from the day on which the software was installed/upgraded
- Runs automatically on non-working days
- Time normally set to the following:
  - Small Business Edition – between 12:00 and 14:00
  - Mid-range or above – between 23:00 and 06:00
- Start date – the date at the time of the installation/upgrade
- End date – none

The view will show all available non-processing days in the future, sorted in date order. Any stored dates earlier than the current system date are not displayed.

### 4.7.4 Edit schedule

By default schedules are already set up for updating non-processing days and for updating the validation information. However, you can edit the schedules if the timing is not convenient for your working processes. It can also be updated manually as required.

To change the schedule for either **Non Processing Days** or for **Bank Account Validation**, switch to the relevant tab. Click the **Schedule** button on the right. For the schedule to run, it must be set to be **Active** using the buttons at the top on the right of the form. You can change the recurrence period as required and the day and time if the default is not convenient. When finished, click **OK** to close the dialog.

You can manually update either the **Non Processing Days** list or the **Bank Account Validation** database by clicking the **Update Now** button on the right of the appropriate tab.

#### Bank Account Validation

In respect of **Bank Account Validation** the relevant elements are updated as follows:

- Sort Code Database
- Sort Code Substitutions
- Modulus Data

The date of the most recent update for each is provided with the version number.

The scheduling options are the same as for Non Processing Days, but the default is set to weekly, as recommended by Albany Software Ltd.

## Database Backup

A schedule for backing up the database is not present by default. When you click the **Schedule** button for the first time, the process of creating a schedule will begin.

By default, the schedule **Name** is *Database Backup*. This cannot be changed. The default interval settings are those recommended by Albany Software Ltd, running every night on weekdays. Your organisation may wish to change this.

The schedule is **On Hold** by default to ensure that backups do not begin until you are sure that it is all set up correctly, at which point you must open this dialog and click in the **Active** option.

## Non Processing Days

In respect of **Non Processing Days**, the refreshed view will show all available non processing days in the future, sorted in ascending date order. Any stored dates earlier than the current system date are not displayed. The following illustration shows the default schedule for Non Processing Days. This can be changed to suit the requirements for each organisation:

The screenshot shows a 'Schedule' dialog box with the following settings:

- Name:** Non Processing Days
- Status:** ☒ Active, ☐ On Hold
- Recurrence:**
  - ☐ Daily
  - ☐ Weekly
  - ☒ Monthly
- On non-working days:** Run
- Time:** Connect to Albany to retrieve data at 23:00:00
- Range of Recurrence:**
  - Start Date:** 30/01/2012
  - End Date:** 31/12/9998
- Buttons:** OK, Cancel

**Figure 29: Default Non Processing Days schedule**

Using the options provided, this can be changed to a weekly or even daily schedule, if deemed necessary.

---

! It is worth considering the issues with an increase in scheduling frequency where it may have an impact on performance. Albany Software Ltd considers a monthly schedule suitable for most organisations.

---

## 5 Administration

Administration is conducted by a specific type of administrative user who can set up the initial access rights for anyone using the system. This includes all users and their permissions within the system. This administrator, depending on the licence purchased, may also be able to set up groups of users and their permissions.

This area of the application provides three groups of administrative tasks: **User Activity**, **User Settings** and **Payment Settings**. The items visible to each user depend on two factors, the licence and the current viewing permissions, i.e. you may be licensed for the use of user groups, but your individual access permissions may not allow you to view this feature. For example, it is normal that only users with full administrative permissions will be able to view **User Activity**.

### User Activity

The **User Activity** area provides access, with appropriate permissions and licensing, to the following:

- Dual Administration Changes – paragraph 5.1
- Current User Activity – paragraph 5.2

### 5.1 Dual Administration Changes

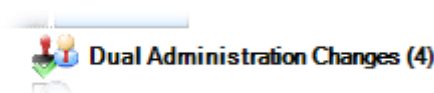
If Dual Administration is licensed and set up, this area will allow access and management of a number of changes that are monitored for the purpose. Dual administration will only be accessible to users who have been given express permission to do so within the framework of Albany ePAY.

---

! This feature is not normally available in the Small Business Edition.

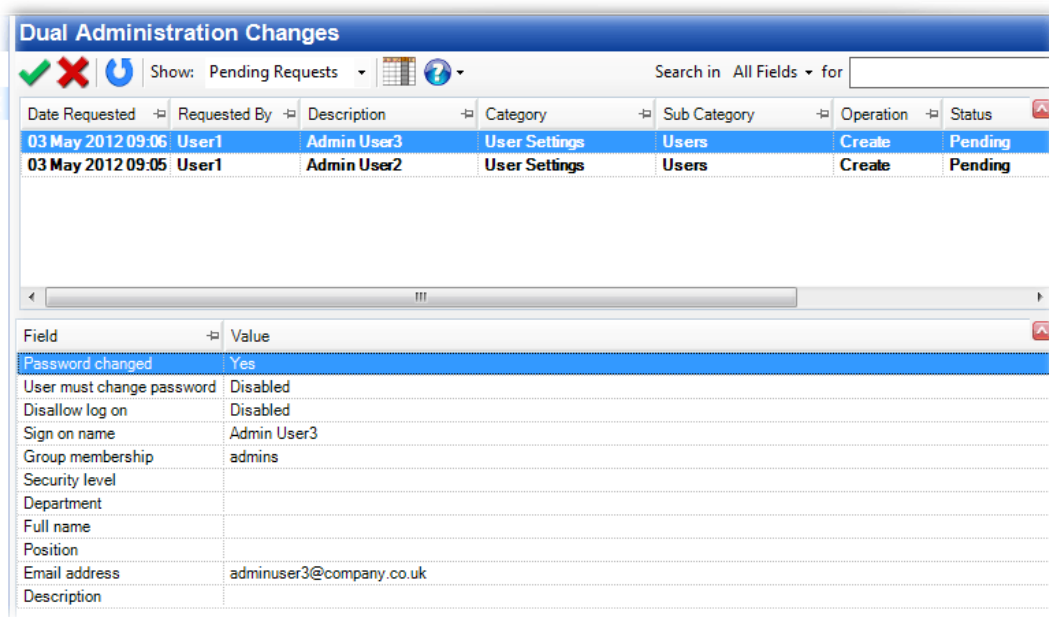
---

If set up, changes that require secondary authorisation for approval will be listed here with a separate row for each change, shown in bold where the change awaits acceptance or rejection. The menu label is displayed in bold with the number of changes awaiting approval shown in brackets to the right of the label, as shown in the following illustration:



**Figure 30: Dual Administration pending items**

Click on the menu item to view the pending items in the right hand pane. For each row selected in the upper pane, the details of changes that have been made for that row are displayed in the lower pane. These are the changes awaiting approval or rejection.





**Figure 31: Dual Administration Changes screen**

### 5.1.1 Refresh view

To ensure that the view includes all outstanding changes that may have been made by other users, you may wish to click .

### 5.1.2 Accept/Reject Changes

To accept and confirm a change, select the appropriate row and click  on the toolbar. To reject and cancel a change, select the appropriate row and click . You cannot accept or reject more than one row at a time.

! If you have made a change which is now awaiting approval by another administrative user with appropriate permissions, you can still click . This does not reject the change; it cancels it and is marked as such in the record.

### 5.1.3 Show Pending or All Requests

By default, only *Pending Requests* are displayed. To show all requests, click the filter arrow to the right of the **Show** box and select *All Requests*. All rows are then displayed. This will allow viewing of whether the change was accepted, rejected or cancelled and by whom. Rows that have not yet been accepted or rejected appear in bold while rows that have been accepted or rejected are no longer in bold.

! It is also possible to customise the grid display. For more information refer to Chapter 9.

### 5.1.4 Search

If the list of changes is very large and you want to locate specific change, perhaps to view the outcome, a Search facility is provided. You can search specific fields (columns) or all (default). To search a specific field, click the filter arrow to the right of **All Fields** and select the filter you want to use from those listed.

---

! If you want to search *All Requests* make sure that you select *All Requests* in the **Show** box before running the search. This will include all historical data as well as pending changes.

---

To specify the search item, click in the box to the right and type the value you want to search for and then press **Enter**. Values you enter generally work on a 'like' principle, so if you typed, for example, account, all items that include that word will be listed in the result.

---

! Searches are NOT case sensitive.

---

■ **Dates**

If you want to search for a specific date, you can do so using a number of formats. However, it is necessary to use a format that includes the day, the month and the year, such as: dd/mm/yy, dd.mm.yy or even d/m/yy. A search based on either of these formats will return everything that corresponds to the date you entered. So, when 19/4/12 is entered, all rows that include 19 Apr 2012 at any time will be supplied.

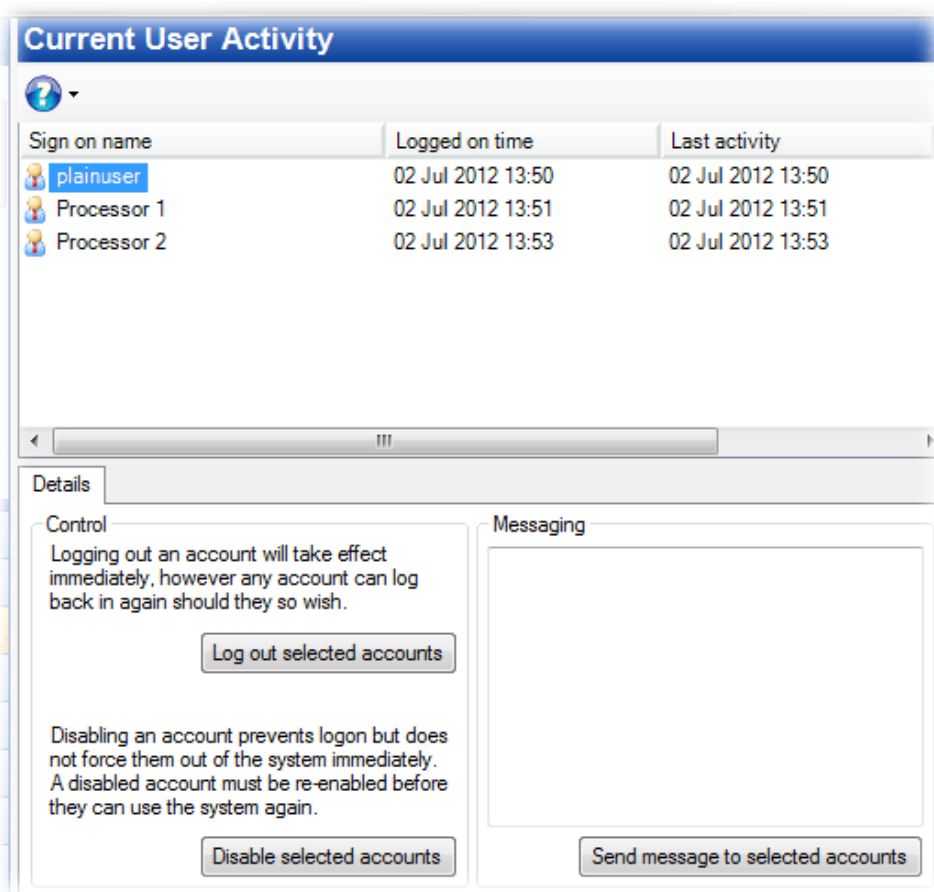
■ **Clear search criteria**

To remove the search criteria and return to the full list, delete the text you entered as the value for the search.

## 5.2 Current User Activity

The *Current User Activity* screen is an administrative tool that provides access to information on user account activity. This includes when a particular user logged in, last performed and activity within the application and whether the user has any orphaned processes in operation. Only users who are currently logged in are listed here.

Select **Administration** and under **Usage and Access** select **Current User Activity**.



**Figure 32: Current user activity**

---

! You cannot see your own activity within this screen. You are only able to see the activity on other user accounts and similarly, log other users out, disable other user accounts, or send other users messages.

---

In addition to simply providing information the *Current User Activity* screen also facilitates the following:

1. Forcing User Log Off

To force a user to log off, select the user or users you wish to log off. To select more than one, hold down the **Ctrl** key as you click the user name.

---

! In the event of an emergency when all users need to be logged off, click the first in the list, hold down the **Shift** key and click the last in the list to select all users.

---

Click the **Log out selected accounts** button in the **Details** tab in the lower pane.

2. Disable selected users

To disable the accounts of users, select the user or users you wish to disable. To select more than one, hold down the **Ctrl** key as you click the user name.

Click the **Disable selected accounts** button in the **Details** tab in the lower pane.

3. Send messages to selected accounts

To send a message to one or more users currently logged on, select the user or users you wish to contact. To select more than one, hold down the **Ctrl** key as you click the user name.

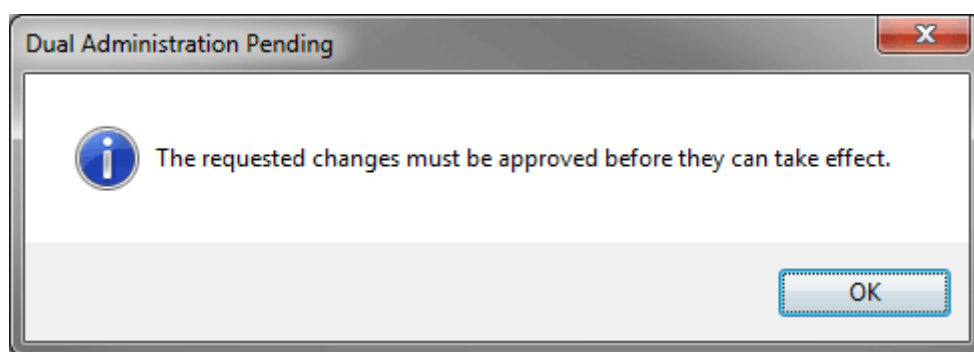
Type the message in the **Messaging** box and click **Send messages to selected accounts** button in the lower pane.

## User Settings

The **User Settings** area covers several areas of functionality. Items covered in this area can include:

- Users – paragraph 5.4
- Groups – paragraph 5.5
- Contacts – paragraph 5.6
- Permissions – paragraph 5.7
- Bacs User Certificates – paragraph 5.8

If Dual Administration is active for User Settings (see paragraph 4.6), when a change is made to the User Settings, a message similar to the following will be displayed on screen:



**Figure 33: Dual Administration Pending message**

Click **OK** to close the message. Changes are accepted or rejected by another qualified user before they are visible (see paragraph 5.1.2).

---

! The message will vary, depending on the change, addition or deletion made.

---

## 5.3 User Segregation

In order to provide heightened security, when a user does not have access to a particular aspect or function of the software, that user will be prevented from seeing the records that are associated with that function. In some cases this may also affect menus visible in the client, in a situation where all permissions for that feature have been removed for that user. Permissions for users and groups are described in paragraph 5.7.

## 5.4 Users

The *Users* screen allows you to create and maintain user accounts for the users of the application. Navigate to the users screen by selecting **Users** from the **Administration**, **User Settings** menu.


At the first use of the application, there is normally a single user with administrative permissions and membership of the *admins* group. You will create users with restricted access for the specific purposes that they need.

---

! The Small Business Edition does not include groups, but all other editions include this feature.

---

### 5.4.1 Create user

To create a new user, click . A **new item** will appear in the list of users in the upper pane with the default name, **new item**, which is also displayed in the **Details** tab in the lower pane.

Overtyping or replacing the **Sign on name** default text with the correct name for the new user. This might be related to the job, name or initials, depending on the convention used. Fill in the remaining fields with appropriate information as required.




---


! For full functionality of the software, you must provide a valid email address and password.

---

The **User properties** you can supply are:

- **Sign on name**
- **Description**
- **Email address**
- **Full name**
- **Department**
- **Position**
- **Security level**
- **Disallow log on** (see paragraph 5.4.3 for more information)
- **New password**
- **Confirm password** (this must be identical to the entry in the **New password** box)
- **Require user to change password at next log on** (this is used to ensure the user chooses his/her own password within parameters that can be specified on first logging on)

Once you have completed as much information as required, click . If one of the mandatory fields, such as the password box, has not been completed, a message will load to inform you of the fact. Notice the  icon to the right of the box, showing which box has the error. Click **OK** to close the message and complete the information correctly before clicking  again.


If you accidentally click , you can click the **Cancel** button to abort the creation of a new user. You will be asked to confirm cancellation. Click **Yes** to confirm cancellation or **No** to continue with creation.

### Add group membership


If you need to add a **Group Membership** for the account, ensure that the appropriate user account is selected. On the right of the **Details** pane you will see the **Group Membership** pane with, by default, **all groups** displayed. If you do not see **all groups** displayed, click the **Display** button and select **all groups**.





**Figure 34: Group membership**

From the groups listed, select the group you are going to add the user to and click . Once the user is added, the name of the group becomes emboldened to show membership. Repeat this procedure to add the user to another group, if required.

---

! You can add a user to more than one group at a time by holding down the **Ctrl** key as you click the group names before clicking .

---

Click  to save all the information. If you forget to click  when you move away from the **Users** screen, you will be prompted to save the changes.

Once the user has been added to one or more groups, when the user name is selected in the *Users* screen, the groups that user is a member of are displayed in bold in the *Group Membership* area. The view can be narrowed to show only those groups the selected user is a member of by clicking the filter arrow and selecting **group membership only**.

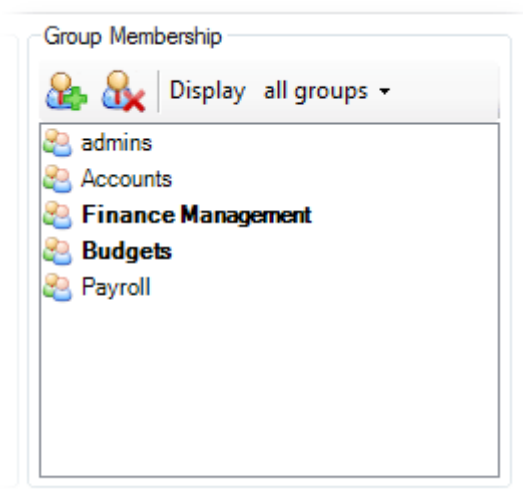


Figure 35: Active group membership

### Remove group membership

All groups that a user is a member of are displayed in bold. To remove a group membership for the user in edit mode, click the group name in the **Group Membership** box and click . To save the changes click .

#### 5.4.2 Delete user account

You can delete accounts, for example when a user leaves an organisation, however you may wish to consider carefully if the account should be deleted or perhaps edited or changed instead. Should you decide to go ahead with deletion of a user, click .

You will be asked for confirmation before the user account is deleted. Click **Yes** to delete the user or **No** to cancel deletion.

#### 5.4.3 Maintaining user accounts

Maintenance of user accounts generally concerns changes to group memberships, changes of name, for example on marriage, or a change in circumstances.

- Change user account details

Select the sign on name of the account you wish to change from those available and edit the details in the lower pane as required. Click when changes are complete.

- Cancel changes

If you wish to discard changes, click the **Cancel** button. You will be prompted before the changes are cancelled. Click **Yes** to abandon the changes or **No** to return to the edit.

- Remove group membership

To remove a member from a group, select the user to be removed, then select the name of the group from the **Group Membership** pane list on the right of the **Details** pane. Click . The name of the group will no longer be in bold as the selected user is no longer a member of the group.

- Disable a user account

If a user leaves the company, you may wish to disable the account. As the properties can take some time to set up, it is usually preferable to disable the account until a new employee takes up the role when it may be easier to reactivate and modify the existing account rather than create a new one. The simplest method for this is to edit the account as described

above and put a checkmark in the **Disallow log on** check box. Effectively, this disables the account until the check mark is removed, at such time that the other details, including the password, can be changed.

- Re-enable an account

Re-enable the account for a new employee by editing the details as required, including the password and removing the checkmark in the **Disallow log on** check box to re-enable the account.

#### 5.4.4 Dual Administration control

If your system uses Dual Administration, creation or deletion of users and any of the following modifications will be held pending Dual Administration confirmation (see paragraph 5.1):

- Sign on name
- Disallow log on
- Password
- Group membership

At the point at which you save the changes, the following message will be displayed:

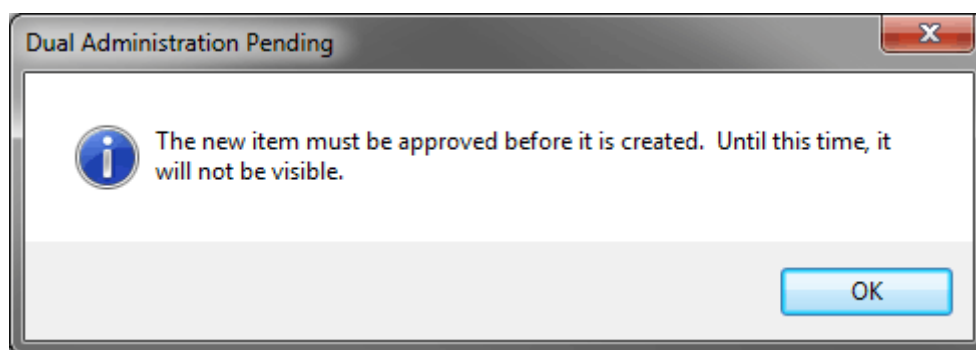


Figure 36: Dual Administration Pending

When incremental changes are pending the **Dual Administration Changes** menu item is emboldened and the number of pending changes is shown in brackets to the right.

---

! Only users with rights to do so can see the menu item and confirm or accept the changes.

---

## 5.5 Groups

In the navigation area, select **Administration** and under **User Settings** select **Groups**.

---

! Groups are not available in the Small Business Edition.

---

The *Groups* screen allows you to place users into logical groupings by organisational function or job role. This helps when assigning permissions, described in paragraph 5.7 as permissions are easier to organise in respect of groups of personnel with common responsibilities rather than designing individual permissions for each user which can be time consuming and difficult to maintain.

- 
- ! By default a group called *admins* is created and contains the initial administration user. For security reasons, it is imperative to restrict membership of the *admins* group to only those who need full access.
- 



The information held against each group includes:

- The name of the group
- A description of the group
- A list of users having membership of the group



### 5.5.1 Create groups

To create a new group, click .


A **new item** will appear in the list of groups in the upper pane with the default name, **new item**, which is also displayed in the **Details** tab in the lower pane. By default, **all users** are displayed in the *Members* area of the **Details** tab, but by clicking to the right of **Display** you can choose from **all users** or **members only**. When **all users** is selected, the users that are members are displayed in bold text.

On creation, a new group will not contain any members. These have to be added from the *Users* screen. In the **Group name** box, replace the default name with the one you want to use. When ready, click . The group is now saved and ready to use. Instead of clicking  you can click **Cancel** to reject creation of the group.

### 5.5.2 Modify group details

Select the name of the group you wish to change in the upper pane and edit in the **Details** tab in the lower pane. As soon as you begin changing either the name or the description, the  button will be enabled and when you have finished, click . If you wish to discard the changes, click **Cancel**.

### 5.5.3 Delete group

Although it is unlikely that you will need to delete a group, if you have created a group in error, you may wish to delete it. In the event that you need to do so, select the name of the group from the list in the upper pane and click . You will be asked to confirm deletion of the specified group. Click **Yes** to confirm deletion or **No** to keep the group.

## 5.6 Contacts

In the navigation area select **Administration** and under **User Settings** select **Contacts**.

The *Contacts* screen allows you to store information relevant to contacts external to Albany ePAY who can be sent reports if there is a requirement for this.

### 5.6.1 Create contacts

To create a new contact, click .


A **new item** will appear in the list of contacts in the upper pane with the default name, **new item**, which is also displayed in the **Details** tab in the lower pane.

In the **Name** box, replace the default name with the name of the contact you want to use.

The following information can be stored for a contact:



- **Name:** Mandatory and must be unique within Contacts
- **Address:** Optional

- **Telephone:** Optional
- **Fax:** Optional
- **Email:** Mandatory


Each contact must include a unique **Name** and must also include an **Email** address in a valid format. If the name is not unique and/or an email address is not included, a message will be displayed to that effect and  will be displayed to the right of the box that includes incorrect or missing information.

When ready, click . The contact is now saved and ready to use.

### 5.6.2 Modify contact details

Select the name of the contact you wish to change in the upper pane and edit in the **Details** tab in the lower pane. As soon as you begin changing either the name or the description, the  button will be enabled and when you have finished, click . If you wish to discard the changes, click **Cancel**.

### 5.6.3 Delete contact

In the event that you need to remove the details of a contact, select the name of the contact from the list in the upper pane and click . You will be asked to confirm deletion of the specified contact. Click **Yes** to confirm deletion or **No** to keep the contact.

## 5.7 Permissions

The purpose of permissions is to provide increased security and control over which users are able to perform different tasks rather than giving all users full access and control. To simplify the process, permissions can be set for individual users or for groups. In addition defaults for new payment profiles or payment libraries are included to save repeated maintenance, but any previously set up profile or payment library is listed separately.

Without carefully established permissions, the payment process may encounter difficulties and be halted as a result.

In order to restrict unauthorised users from viewing data, additional permissions mean that, for example, some users may not be able to view all of the menu items. So, a user who does not have the *Setup* permission for *Users* will not be able to view the navigation menu item for **Users** in **Administration**, **User Settings**. The item will be missing from the menu and when **User Settings** is selected in the navigation area, the item will not be visible in the right hand pane.

If you have the rights to access this area you will be able to view and you may also have rights to modify the permissions.



Select **Administration** and under **User Settings** select **Permissions**.

Use the *Permissions* screen to set permissions for individual user accounts or for groups.

---

! Groups are not available in the Small Business Edition.

---

This screen is divided into two areas. The upper part includes a grid displaying all the available permissions. Those with a  symbol to the right are groups of permissions that can be expanded by clicking the  symbol.

+	Description	Validate	Authoris	2 of 3	3 of 3	Send	Void	View Det	Setup
<input type="checkbox"/>	Administrative functions								
<input type="checkbox"/>	Bacs								
<input type="checkbox"/>	Faster Payments								
<input type="checkbox"/>	Direct Submissions								
<input type="checkbox"/>	Payment Libraries								

Users Groups

Search

Selected user is a member of:

administrat... Accounts 1 Accounts 2

Accounts 3 Manager 1 Manager 2

Manager 3 User 1

**Figure 37: Permissions screen**

The lower area allows viewing of **Users** or **Groups** in the appropriate tab; click the tab to select whichever option you wish to use.

- 
- ! To save time and maintain consistency, permissions are most frequently set for groups rather than individual users. However, permissions can be set for either or both. If a user is a member of a group, then he/she will automatically have all the permissions for that group, but as an individual user, he/she may be assigned additional permission added to those already inherited from the group. It is NOT possible to exclude permission for an individual who already has that permission by virtue of a group membership. By default members of the *admins* group have full permissions allocated, so in order to maintain security it is recommended that specific groups are used for specific role types rather than using the *admins* group.
- 

Check boxes are displayed in appropriate areas of the grid where permissions can be set for any user or group selected in the lower area.

Once a profile has been created, the ability to use the profile, process any part of a submission, is governed here. Each profile is listed as are all users and groups set up on the system. For each profile, a series of checkboxes is available to assign different steps for the selected user or group. The same applies to Payment Libraries where each, once created, is listed with separate permissions.

- 
- ! This screen allows you to hide/show the upper or lower areas to assist when the screen becomes overcrowded.
-

### 5.7.1 Users tab

When the **Users** tab is active and a user selected, the pane to the right will display the groups that the user is a member of. This may be a single group or many, but will normally be at least a single group.

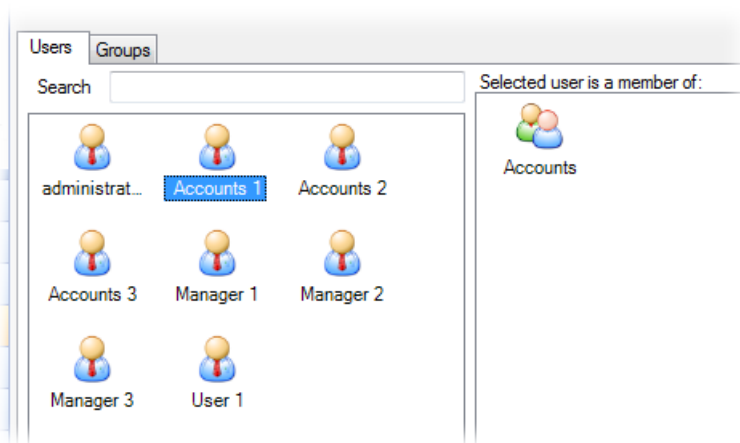


Figure 38: Users tab – showing group membership

### 5.7.2 Groups tab

When the **Groups** tab is active and a group selected, the pane to the right will display the members of the selected group. Not all groups have to contain any members, some will contain one or two and others may contain many. Membership depends on the size and requirements of your organisation.

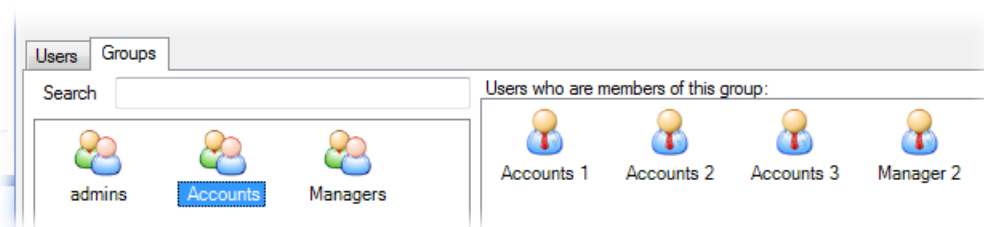



Figure 39: Groups tab – showing membership

### 5.7.3 Modify permissions

For a group or a single user, activate the appropriate tab and select the group or user for whom you wish to modify permissions.

In the upper area related items are listed together for ease of access, such as **Administrative functions**. If necessary, expand the appropriate permissions area by clicking the  symbol beside it.

+	Description	Validate	Authoris	2 of 3	3 of 3	Send	Void	View Det	Setup
[-]	Administrative functions								
	Bacs Limits								<input type="checkbox"/>
	Bacs Reports						<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>
	File Formats								<input type="checkbox"/>
	General Administration								<input type="checkbox"/>
	Global Contacts								<input type="checkbox"/>
	Report Download Activity						<input type="checkbox"/>		
	Report Download Profiles								<input type="checkbox"/>
	User Administration								<input type="checkbox"/>
	User Certificates								<input type="checkbox"/>
[+]	System Functions								
	Bacs	<input type="checkbox"/>							
	Faster Payments	<input type="checkbox"/>							
[+]	Direct Submissions								<input type="checkbox"/>
[+]	Payment Libraries								<input type="checkbox"/>

Figure 40: Expanded permissions

Under the *Direct Submissions* area, all profiles stored on the system are listed. This offers an opportunity to specify permissions for access to stages of a payment for individual users or user groups. So, if you need to set up a specific user or group of users to have access to some, but not all, of the stages in processing a particular payment, you can do so here.

Permissions are added by clicking on a check box so that it has a check mark or removed by clicking an already checked box to remove the check mark.

If permissions are viewed for a single user who already has inherited group permissions, these will appear as checked but disabled, outlined in the following illustration in red, and cannot be removed for a single user whilst a member of the group that has the permissions allocated. It is possible, however, to allow additional permissions, indicated in the following illustration with the standard green check mark.

---

! Each licensed payment method is listed below the Administrative functions.

---

+	Description	Validate	Authorise 1 of 3	2 of 3	3 of 3	Send	Void	View Details	Setup
[+]	Administrative functions								
	Bacs	<input type="checkbox"/>							
	Faster Payments	<input type="checkbox"/>							
[-]	Direct Submissions								<input type="checkbox"/>
	Expenses	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Payroll	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Subscriptions	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	New Payment Profile Default	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
[+]	Payment Libraries								<input type="checkbox"/>

Figure 41: Inherited permissions


---

! It is a Bacs requirement that any user able to validate or authorise a payment must also be able to view the Bacs reports. For this reason any user or group assigned Validate or Authorise permissions will also be assigned View Details permissions automatically. If those permissions are removed, the View Details permission remains checked and must be unchecked separately if this permission is not required.

---



Once you have made changes you have the option to abandon these changes by clicking the **Cancel** button on the toolbar at the top. This will abandon all changes you have made to the active selection.

If you are satisfied that your changes are good, click  to save the changes.

#### 5.7.4 New defaults

In order to speed up permission settings, additional default Permissions rows are included. These include:

- *New Payment Profile Default*

When a new Payment Profile is created, the permissions currently in place for each of the above will be automatically copied to the new profile. This is not linked in any way, so if the defaults are later changed, existing profiles will not be affected.

- *New library defaults*

When checked, this allows the user/group to set up a new library.

#### 5.7.5 Administrative functions

The Administrative functions list of Permissions covers the accessibility and usage rights of users and groups. It includes the following:

1. Bacs Limits, Setup
2. Bacs Reports (utilised in Report Delivery)
  - View Details
  - Setup
3. File Formats, Setup
4. General Administration, Setup (used to allow setting up of Notification Groups)
5. Global Contacts, Setup

---

! Global contacts are normally external to the system, i.e. they do not have access to Albany ePAY, but may need to be sent reports (see paragraph 5.6).

---

6. Report Delivery, Setup
7. Report Download Activity, View Details
8. Report Download Profiles, Setup
9. User Administration, Setup

---

! Includes the setup and maintenance of Users, Groups and Permissions. In addition, this permission allows viewing of Current User Activity.

---

10. User Certificates, Setup
11. System Functions

This area can also be expanded to display permissions specifically for system wide functions. These are:

- Dual Administration Setting, Setup

- Audit Reports
  - View Details
  - Setup
- Bacs Connections, Setup
- System Maintenance, Setup
- End of Day Configuration, Setup
- Purging and Archiving, Setup
- System Settings, Setup

Where a user or group does not have *Setup* permission for any item, it will not only be unavailable, but also may be hidden from view in the main navigation area of Albany ePAY. These users may be able to use the features covered, but only in the context specified and without being able to change them in any way. For example, a user without *Setup* rights to *Global Contacts* would not see the **Contacts** menu in the **Administration, User Settings** area of the navigation pane, nor would they be able to view the *Contacts* screen, however, with appropriate settings such as Bacs Reports, Setup, they would be able to send reports to Contacts that another user had set up.

### 5.7.6 Dual Administration

Dual Administration is a feature of Albany ePAY that adds an additional layer of security by requiring two administrative users to confirm specific administrative changes to the system. The areas of focus are predominantly those that may lead to fraud being perpetrated if one person was able to act independently, for example: using the system to send payments to themselves or associates, thus bypassing company security/payment authorisation standards.

---

! This feature is not normally available in the Small Business Edition.

---

In addition, dual administration provides extra protection to the users/company by ensuring that accidental and potentially costly mistakes are averted and thereby helps to prevent malicious activity that may have recovery and reputation costs. Before Dual Administration can be enabled and used, appropriate permissions must be applied to the relevant areas for those who will be responsible for authorising the changes.

Before dual administration can be used, at least two users on the system must be assigned permission to the system function, Dual Administration Setting, Setup. These may be members of the admins group or a group specifically designed for this purpose. In addition, these users must be assigned permission to the area for which dual administration will be used:

- System Settings, Setup
- and/or
- User Administration, Setup

---

! The users with permissions for each of these areas do not need to be the same, but all must have Dual Administration Setting, Setup permission.

---

### Items awaiting approval

If dual administration is active on your system, when a change is made to permissions, a message similar to the following will be displayed (this message will vary depending on the action awaiting approval):

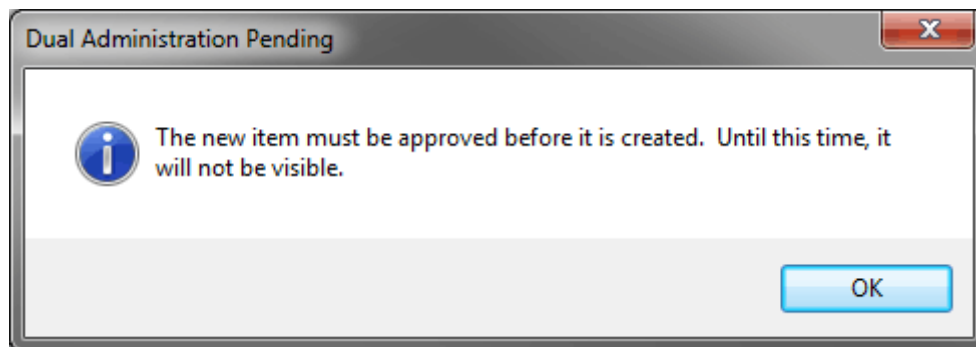


Figure 42: Approval Pending

Click **OK** to close the message. You will now see a bar at the top of the **Permissions** area. Whilst this bar is in place and changes are awaiting approval, you will not be able to make any further changes, as shown below.

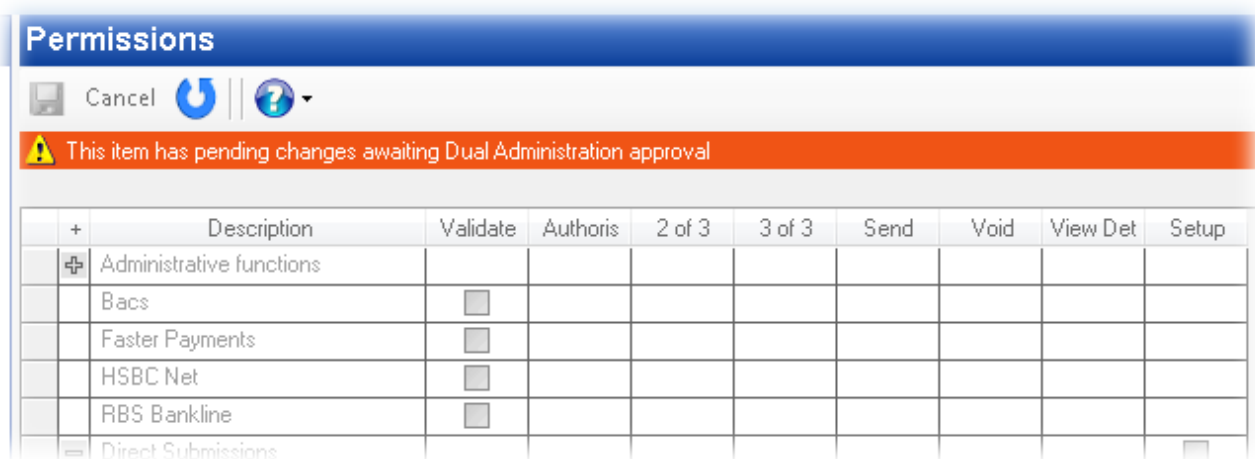


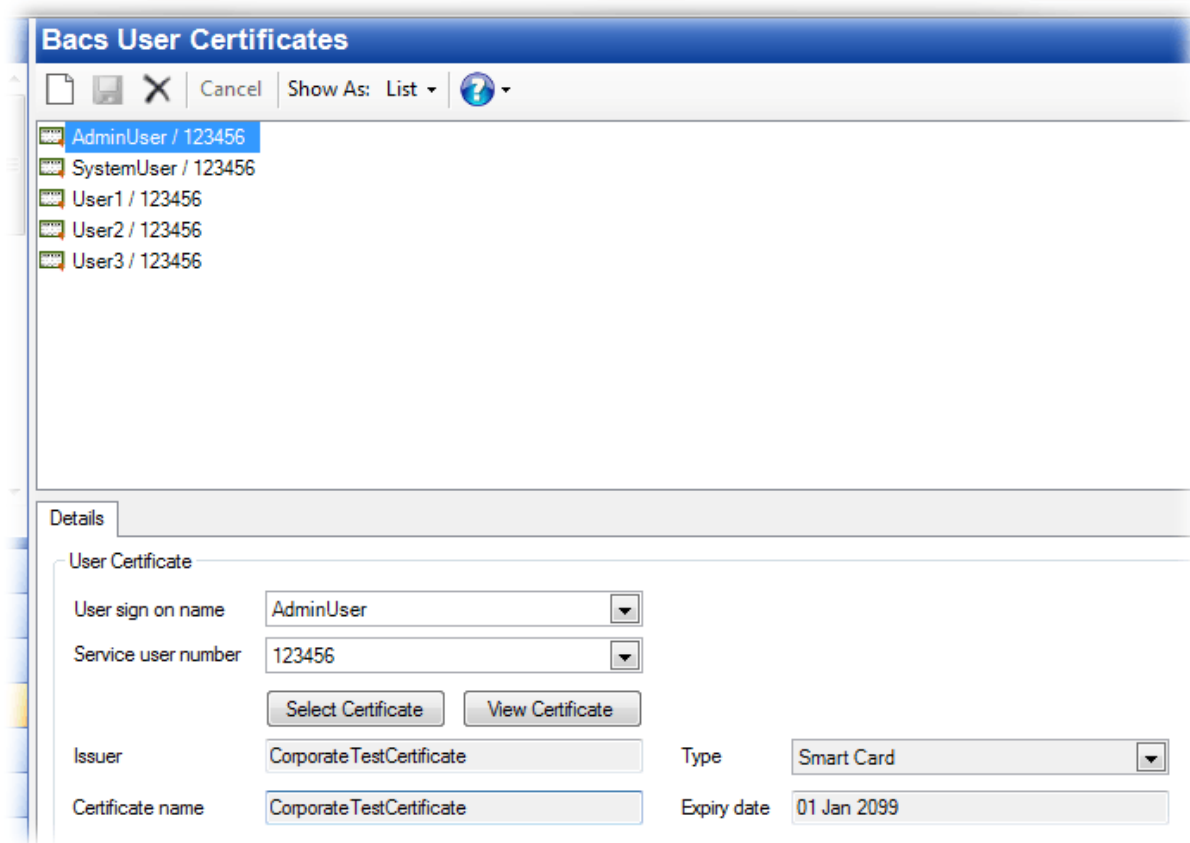
Figure 43: Permission changes pending

This alert message bar will disappear once the relevant permissions have been approved or rejected.

## 5.8 Bacs User Certificates

Select **Administration** and under **User Settings**, select **Bacs User Certificates**.

The *Bacs User Certificates* screen allows you to associate registered Bacs user certificates (supplied with your Smart Card or HSM) with a Bacs Service User Number and user account. Adding a Bacs User Certificate in this screen connects a valid certificate on your system with a user able to make payments. Each certificate can be associated with one or more users. Without this association a user will be unable to use a Smart Card or HSM to process payments. An example of the *Bacs User Certificates* screen here:



**Figure 44: Bacs user certificates screen**

Any user who will be conducting payments on the system must be associated here with a valid SUN.

Before payments can be made using Albany ePAY, the Smart Card issued by your sponsoring bank must be set up correctly.

When your card is issued, the sponsoring bank will also supply activation instructions which you should follow. If you have any problems with this procedure, you should contact your sponsoring bank who will be able to assist with this.

---

! You will need to have the Smart Card reader connected to your workstation with the Smart Card inserted.

---

### 5.8.1 Check that the certificate is active

You can quickly and easily check that the Smart Card is active as follows:

1. Open Internet Explorer and go to the following website <https://paymentservices.bacs.co.uk>.
2. When prompted, click the **Sign** or **Sign & Submit** button on the web page and enter your Smart Card PIN.
3. If you are successfully logged in, you will know that your card is fully active. If not, you must contact your sponsoring bank to complete activation.

Once you have confirmed that your card is active, you need to ensure that all the certificates from your Bacs Smart Card have been registered (exported to the local certificate store on your workstation) and are ready to be used for Bacs submissions.

### 5.8.2 Register the Certificates

1. In Windows, from the **Start** menu locate (normally in **All Programs**) the **Gemplus** or **Gemalto** menu and open either the *Gemsafe* or *Classic Client Toolbox*.
2. Locate **Certificates**, enter your **Smart Card PIN** and click **Login**.
3. Click **Register all**. This will export the Smart Card Certificates to the Windows certificate store.

---

! If you see a warning message that you are about to install a root certificate, click **Yes** to confirm that you wish to do this.

---

4. Click **OK** to the message that informs you that the certificates were registered and close the *Gemsafe* or *Classic Client Toolbox*.


### 5.8.3 Associate a user, Bacs User Certificate and SUN

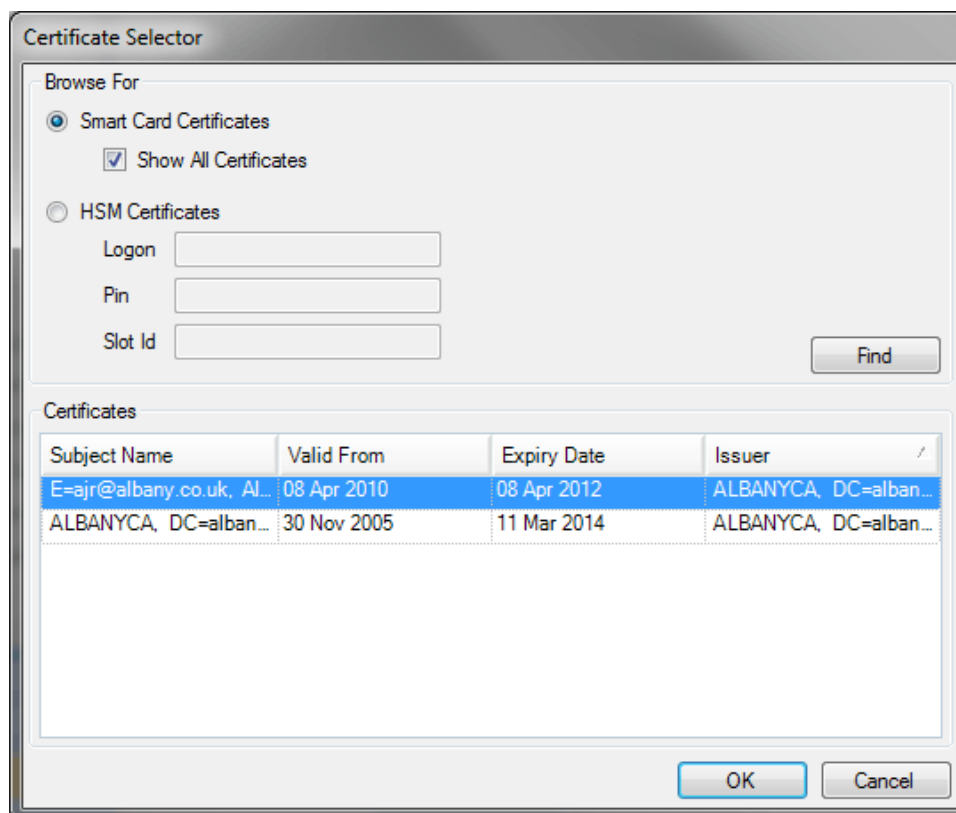
To create the association between a user, a Bacs User Certificate and a SUN, under **Administration, User Settings**, select **Bacs User Certificates**.

---


! If an expired certificate has been associated and remains in the list, remove the old, outdated certificate before setting up the new one.

---

1. Click ; the application creates a new item in the item list below.
2. Select a **User sign on name** from the drop down list.
3. From the drop-down list, select the appropriate **Service user number** for the certificate you wish to set up
4. Click **Select Certificate** to display the *Certificate Selector* dialog box.



**Figure 45: Certificate selector dialog**

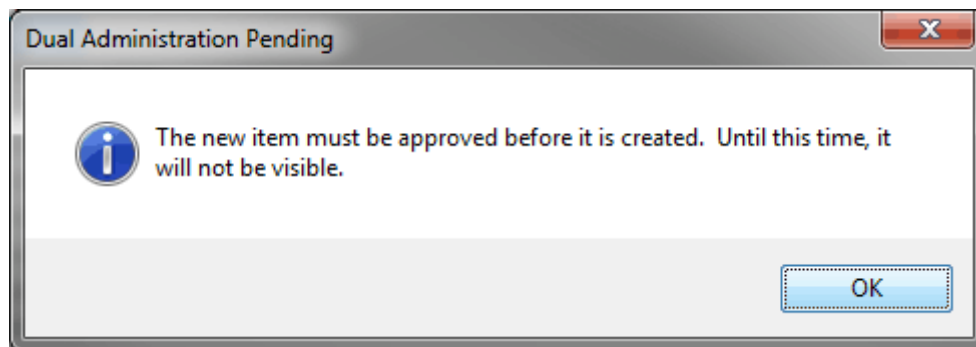
- a. The default option is normally to browse for **Smart Card Certificates**. If you use a Smart Card, continue with this option.  
 If your certificate is not automatically displayed in the grid at the bottom of the window, click to check the **Show All Certificates** check box. Select your certificate from the list and click **OK** to close the dialog box. The remaining read only fields are populated with the relevant information for the certificate you selected.
  - b. If you use HSM as your signing solution, the **HSM Certificates** area of the dialog box will be active allowing you to search for and select the HSM certificate.  
 Enter your HSM **Logon** and **Pin** and the appropriate **Slot Id**.
5. When you have checked that the information displayed is correct, click  to save the record for the new certificate.

## Payment Settings

Use the menu on the left or the links on the right to select specific areas. Items contained in this area can include:

- Payment Profiles – paragraph 5.9
- File Formats – paragraph 5.9.4
- Originating Accounts – paragraph 5.11
- Bacs Limits – paragraph 5.12
- Bacs SUN Information – paragraph 5.13
- Payment Profile Notification Templates – paragraph 5.14

If Dual Administration is active for Payment Settings (see paragraph 4.6), when a change is made to the Payment Settings, a message similar to the following will be displayed on screen:



**Figure 46: Dual Administration Pending message**

Click **OK** to close the message. Changes are accepted or rejected by another qualified user before they are visible (see paragraph 5.1.2).

---

! The message will vary, depending on the change, addition or deletion made.

---


## 5.9 Payment Profiles


The *Payment Profiles* screen allows you to setup and maintain your payment profiles. Payment profiles are at the heart of the software and contain all the processing rules which must be applied to payment files and submissions before they can be submitted to your Clearing and Settlement Mechanism (CSM).

A payment profile contains supporting information required to allow payment files to be submitted. This includes, for example, valid payment methods, SUN, date handling rules, the file format definition, what processing steps need to be undertaken (workflow).


From the *Payment Profiles* screen you can create completely new profiles or edit existing ones. To edit a profile, click on it and the application displays the stored settings for it in the **Details** panel at the bottom of the window.

### 5.9.1 Create payment profiles


To create a payment profile, select **Administration** and under **Payment Settings**, select **Payment Profiles**. The *Payment Profiles* screen is displayed on the right. If this is the first profile created and none already exist you have a single option to create a new profile. Click ; the application creates a new item in the item list below.

If Profiles have already been created, they will be listed on the flyout menu and you can create a new profile from any existing profile by clicking the filter arrow to the right of .

If you create a new profile from an existing profile, it will be a direct copy that can then be edited as required. However, it will not maintain any links, so changes to the first profile would not affect the new profile at a later date.

To create a profile from an existing profile, select **Administration** and under **Payment Settings**, select **Payment Profiles**. In the *Payment Profiles* screen on the right click the filter arrow beside . From the menu, click **From Profile** and move your mouse pointer across to view the available profiles in the flyout menu. Click to select the profile on which you wish to base the new one.

You will see that much of the detail is already there as this is a direct copy of the profile you selected. The name of the profile is a duplicate with the prefix of 'Copy Of'. You will need to replace this with a useful new name. From this point you can edit any of the information in the profile for the copy. It is not linked to the original and changes here will not affect the original.

To create a profile now without linking to an existing profile click ; the application creates a new item in the item list below.

1. Profile Description


You can find the basic settings for your new profile in the **Profile Description** tab at the lower part of the window. In the **Profile Description** tab, replace the default name, *new item*, with a suitable name.

The screenshot shows the 'Profile Description' tab selected. It contains the following elements:

- Details** section:
  - Name:** Text box containing 'Company Payroll'.
  - Description:** Empty text box.
  - Payment methods:** A list box with 'Bacs' (checked) and 'Faster Payments' (unchecked). Below it is a button 'Set As Default Payment Method'.
- Payment profile notification template:** A dropdown menu showing 'Payroll'.
- Icon:** A small icon box showing the 'Sage' logo, with a button to browse for another icon.
- Workflow:** A button.
- Schedule:** A button.

**Figure 47: Profile description**

Information shown in this tab includes:


- **Name** - the name of the profile.
- **Description** - a description for the profile.
- **Payment methods** - the payment methods setup that can be used for the profile, one or more of the check boxes provided can be checked as required for the profile. Figure 31 shows two payment methods. Depending on your licence, you may have access to a single payment method, normally Bacs. You may also have other payment methods set up on your system, such as Faster Payments and or RBS Bankline, a Royal Bank of Scotland specific alternative to Faster Payments (see chapter 3 for information concerning different payment methods).
- **Payment profile notification template** - click the arrow to the right to choose from a list of available templates. See paragraph 5.14 for more information on setting this up.
- **Icon** - using the  button, you can browse for a suitable system item for the profile. The icon is then displayed in the box provided.
- **Set As Default Payment Method** - this allows you to specify the selected payment method as the default, i.e. that which will happen unless specified otherwise. This is useful if you normally use the Bacs 3 day service, but occasionally use Faster Payments. Once you have checked both payments, ensure that you click on the text for the method you want to be default and then click **Set As Default Payment Method**.
- **Workflow** – this allows the setup of workflow specific to this profile. This feature is only enabled once the initial profile has been saved. For details on setting up workflow, see paragraph 5.9.2.
- **Schedule** – this allows you to set up a schedule for the automatic initiation of the profile. This feature is only enabled once the initial profile has been saved. For details on setting up a schedule, see paragraph 5.9.3.

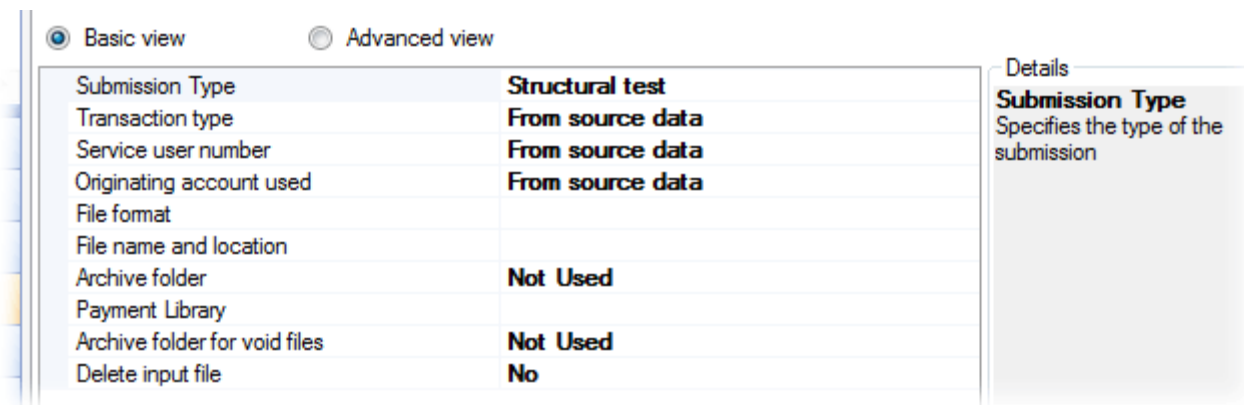
## 2. Processing Rules

The following describes some of the specific rules, but a full table of processing rules can be found at Appendix A: Payment profile processing rules.

The **Processing Rules** tab provides a **Basic view** or an **Advanced view**. For most of your requirements, the **Basic view** will include everything you need to consider. By default, the **Basic view** is active.



In the **Basic view**, ensure that you check each of the rows so that you will know what needs to be completed. Each time you click on a row, an arrow will appear to the right to allow you to select from a suitable list, except the **File name and location** and **Archive folder**, each of which provides a  button that will open the appropriate browse dialog to allow you to locate and specify the required location for each. In each case, check the description on the right and choose the correct option where presented.



<input checked="" type="radio"/> Basic view <input type="radio"/> Advanced view	
Submission Type	Structural test
Transaction type	From source data
Service user number	From source data
Originating account used	From source data
File format	
File name and location	
Archive folder	Not Used
Payment Library	
Archive folder for void files	Not Used
Delete input file	No

**Details**  
**Submission Type**  
Specifies the type of the submission

Figure 48: Processing rules – Basic view

---

! The **Payment Library** feature may not necessarily be available or set up.

---

To switch to the **Advanced view**, click in the **Advanced view** option at the top of the tab.

☐ Basic view
 ☒ Advanced view

<b>Bacs Three Day Specific Rules</b>		<b>Details</b> <b>File name and location</b> The name and location of the input data, if taken from a file. Wildcards (* and ?) are allowed.
Audit record interval	0	
Date bump action	Later	
Invalid payment date action	Next available	
Transaction type	Credit	
<b>Faster Payments Specific Rules</b>		
Invalid date action	Move to current day	
Transaction type	Credit	
<b>General Bacs Rules</b>		
Service user number	My first SUN	
Submission Type	Structural test	
<b>General Rules</b>		
Action if account code invalid	Warn	
Action on suspected duplicated files	Warn	
Archive folder	Not Used	
Archive folder for void files	Not Used	
Automatically print processing reports	No	
Date bump report action	generate line in report	
Delete input file	No	
Encryption key		
Encryption method	None	
File format	ALBACS INP	
File name and location	C:\Testfiles\PAYROLL_M.INP	
Invalid beneficiary name report action	do not report	
Invalid originator name report action	do not report	
Invalid reference report action	do not report	
Originating account used	BUSINESS LTD	
Payment date	Prompt	
Payment Library		
Payment method used	Use default	
Preserve contra information	No	
Processing reports type	Full	
Reject entire file on transaction error	No	
Show input file name	Yes	
User authorisation matrix for file values	None	
User authorisation matrix for item values	None	

Figure 49: Processing rules – Advanced view




The rules available for any profile will depend upon which payment methods have been selected. The information is presented as a sheet of rows of rules (similar to a spreadsheet), each row divided into two columns allowing for the rule title and its associated value. A third 'column' provides a short description of each row, when selected. The rules are grouped as follows in the **Advanced view** (the payment methods visible will depend on those licensed and those selected on the **Profile Description** tab):

- Bacs Three Day Specific Rules
- Faster Payment Specific Rules
- General Bacs Rules
- General Rules

These apply to any payment, regardless of chosen method.

Your system may also be licensed for other payment methods which in turn may have their own rules grouped and attached such as RBS Bankline or HSBC Export.

- 
- ! In either the **Basic view** or the **Advanced view**, a short explanatory description for the currently selected rule is displayed in the right hand panel. For more information, see Appendix A: Payment profile processing rules in which more detailed notes are provided to assist you.
- 

If you wish to see more of the rules on screen at a given time, click  to expand the tab. This will cause the contents of the **Processing Rules** tab to fill the available client area of the application. Click  will return the client area of the application window to what it was before. Alternatively, you can move your mouse pointer over the area dividing the upper and lower panes until the pointer icon changes to , then click and drag up or down to adjust the proportions of the panes.

It is important to set up with care the advanced processing rules for file handling if you are not going to retain the default settings. Additional information for these rules can be found in Appendix C: File handling.

### Attach a Library to a Payment Profile

If you are using a payment library, it can be attached to a payment profile as follows. Navigate to **Administration, Payment Settings, Payment Profiles** and select the profile you wish to attach the payment to. In the lower pane, select the **Processing Rules** tab and scroll through the listed rules until you locate *Payment Library*.

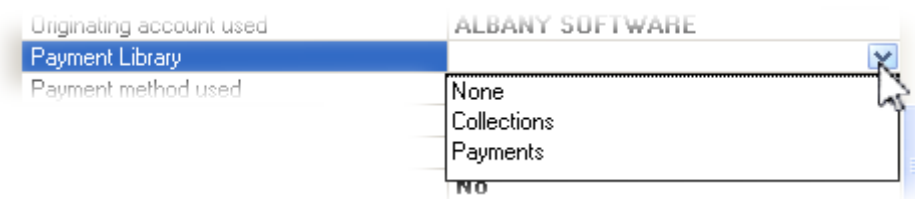



Figure 50: Attach payment library

Click in the right hand box and then click the arrow to the right that will appear. All available payment libraries will be listed. Select the one to be used and click  to save the changes to the Payment Profile.

- 
- ! If a processing file is supplied in the Payment Profile and a Payment Library is also specified, the data will be merged based on the **Account Reference**. In this case, if data is duplicated, the information held in the processing file will take precedence over and, if necessary, override the library data.
- 

### 3. Report Delivery Settings

The **Report Delivery Settings** tab allows you to configure how and where reports generated by the running of your profile are delivered. An example of the **Report Delivery Settings** tab is shown in the following illustration:

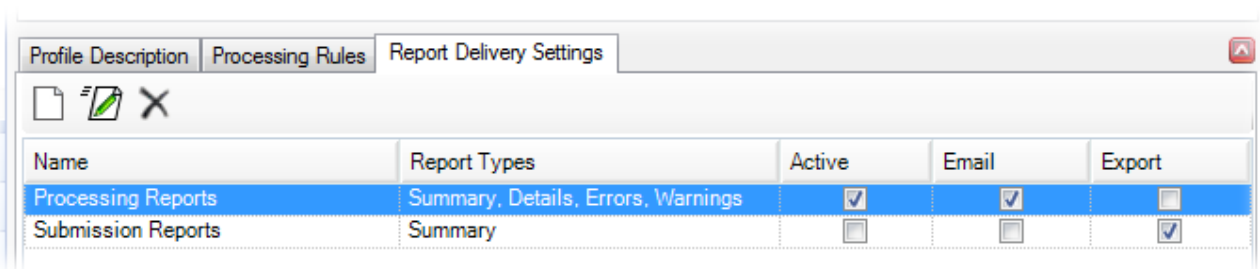


Figure 51: Report delivery settings


You will see that there are checkmarks for **Active**, **Email** and **Export** beside each set of Report Delivery Settings. These checkmarks indicate what has been set up and if the settings are active. The checkboxes cannot be edited here, but are provided for information only.

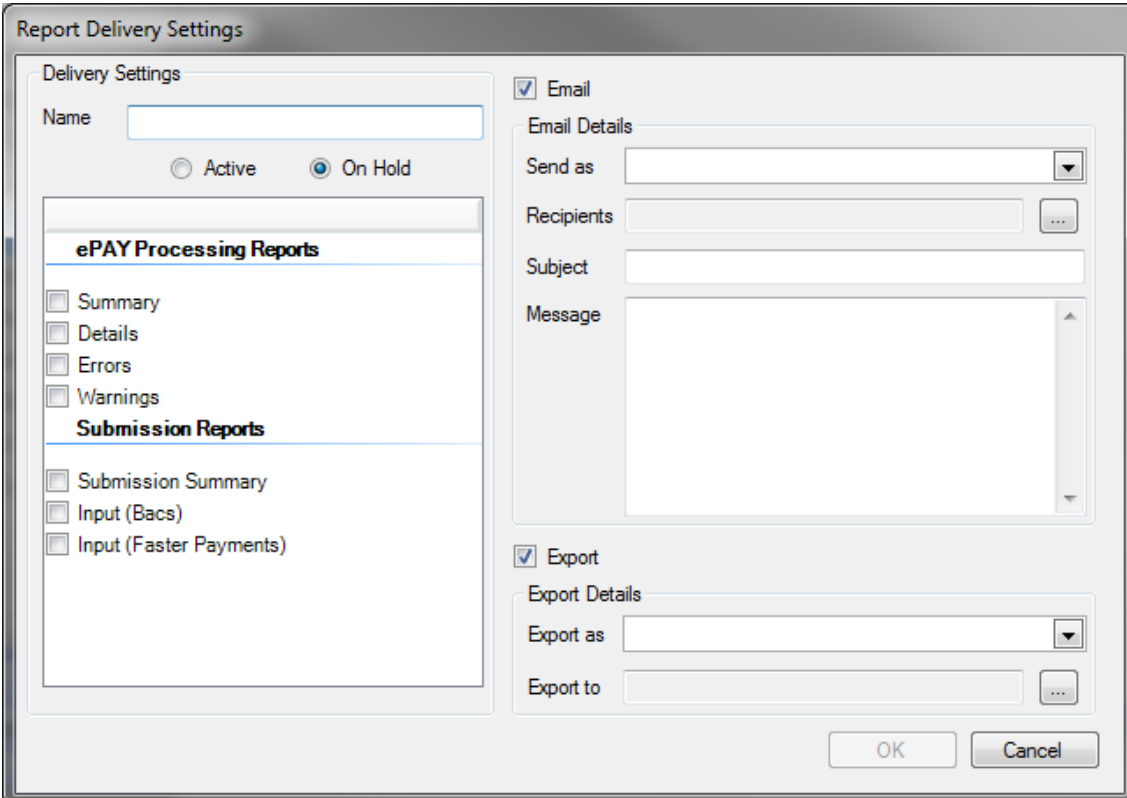
---

! Settings must be *Active* for them to operate automatically.

---

This tab has its own toolbar provided to allow the creation, modification and deletion of report delivery specifications.

To create a new automated session of report delivery click . This opens the *Report Delivery Settings* dialog.



The **Report Delivery Settings** dialog box is shown. It has a title bar and a main area divided into two panes. The left pane, titled **Delivery Settings**, contains a **Name** text box, two radio buttons for **Active** and **On Hold** (with **On Hold** selected), and a list of report types under two sections: **ePAY Processing Reports** (Summary, Details, Errors, Warnings) and **Submission Reports** (Submission Summary, Input (Bacs), Input (Faster Payments)). The right pane contains two checked checkboxes: **Email** and **Export**. Below **Email** is the **Email Details** section with fields for **Send as** (a dropdown), **Recipients** (a text box with a button), **Subject** (a text box), and **Message** (a large text area). Below **Export** is the **Export Details** section with fields for **Export as** (a dropdown) and **Export to** (a text box with a button). At the bottom right are **OK** and **Cancel** buttons.


**Figure 52: Email delivery settings**

a. Delivery Settings

Provide a **Name** for the **Delivery Settings** and then choose from the report types listed. These are grouped into **ePAY Processing Reports**, produced by Albany ePAY, and **Submission Reports**, produced by Bacs. Where a check mark is in the check box, that report will be included in the delivery.

b. Email

By default, this box is checked. If you do not want the reports to be emailed, remove the checkmark. To specify email delivery, leave the checkmark and add the required information. This includes:

- **Send as** – use the filter arrow to the right to select the format that the reports will be sent in. The formats available may depend on the reports selected.
- **Recipients** – click the  button to the right to open the *Select Recipients* dialog from which you can select **Users**, **Groups** and/or **Contacts** to receive

the email. When selected on the left, click > to add them to the list on the right. When you click **OK**, the listed recipients will be added to the **Recipients** box.


---

! Selected recipients must have a valid email address on the system. See paragraph 5.4.1 for more information.

---


- **Subject** – type the subject of the email. This is likely to be the name given to the delivery settings, but doesn't have to be. It should inform the recipient of what the email contains.
- **Message** – this is an optional text box in which you can include additional information if it will add value.

c. Export


By default, this box is checked. If you do not want the reports to be exported and stored in a specific location, remove the checkmark. To specify the export details click the filter arrow to the right of the **Export as** box to indicate the format of the files that will be stored. Click the  button to the right of the **Export to** box to specify the location to which the reports will be added.

Click **OK** to close the *Report Delivery Settings* dialog. The report delivery instruction now appears in the list.

d. Edit Report Delivery instructions

To edit one of the items, select the instruction you wish to change, click  to reopen the *Report Delivery Settings* dialog or double click the row. Continue as above to change and save the instructions.


e. Delete Report Delivery instructions

To delete one of the report delivery settings, select the instruction you wish to change and click . You will be asked to confirm deletion.

f. Activate

If the settings you have created are to be used, you must activate them. Ensure that in the *Report Delivery Settings* dialog the **Active** option is selected.

4. Save Changes

When you have created new or made any changes to an existing profile, you must save the changes. You will be prompted if you forget. To save all changes click .

Click  when complete.

## Permissions

Once a profile has been created, the ability to use the profile, process any part of a submission, is governed in a separate area for permissions. Each profile is listed as are all users and groups set up on the system. For each profile, a series of checkboxes is available to assign different steps for the selected user or group. For full information on setting up permissions refer to paragraph 5.7.

Default permissions will have been copied from the *New Payment Profile Defaults*, but these are not linked and can be changed as needed.

---

! If Dual Administration approval is pending on a profile, even if complete, it will not be possible to process a payment for that profile. This applies not only to a new profile, but also if changes have been made to an existing profile.

---

## 5.9.2 Workflow

The purpose of Workflow is the designation of steps in the submission process. Ultimately, these may be mutually exclusive, and therefore can only be processed by different logon accounts. This

is to ensure that different people take on different processes during a payment submission. This in turn increases security of the submission so that the work is checked by more than one person.

Automation specified in workflow is conducted by a 'system user' rather than an individual user. Any configured workflow step can be automated. An automatic step is normally performed as soon as the previous step has completed.

Workflow is attached to a payment profile and is designed from within a saved payment profile. In order to set it up, open an existing profile or create a new profile (see paragraph 5.9.1).

- 
- ! When you create a new payment profile, the **Workflow** button is not enabled until you have saved the profile.
- 

To set up the workflow, click the **Workflow** button on the **Profile Description** tab of the *Payment Profile* you wish to add the workflow to.

Each of the steps of the payment process is shown as a separate tab. Depending on your requirements; you can enable one, two or three stages in authorisation. You can customise each of the steps as required by clicking on the appropriate tab.

- 
- ! You can also select a different page/tab by clicking the icon displayed at the top of the form.
- 

## Exclusivity

As an enhancement to security, the ability to prevent the same user from performing every step in the workflow for payments is included.

Although this can be achieved in a rudimentary fashion by assigning appropriate user rights, this approach is very rigid and presupposes that specific steps have to be assigned to a specific user. It may not necessarily matter which user validates, confirms, authorises or signs a payment, but it may be necessary to prevent the same user from conducting all these steps in the same payment process.

This is achieved by adding a checkbox to each workflow step in a profile labelled **Make this step exclusive** to determine if that step will participate in an exclusivity check or not.

- 
- ! This check is in addition to the permissions that may have been set up so that, even with full permissions, a single user can be prevented from performing all the steps in a process).
- 

An example of how this works is as follows:

*The exclusivity option is selected for Confirmation, Authorisation (Stage 1) and Send. The result of this case is that any user with appropriate permissions can perform any two of these stages. If User A has confirmed and authorised the payment (Stage 1), then User A will not be permitted to send it. However, if other user has performed either of the other nominated stages, then User A will be permitted to send the payment.*

This exclusivity check does not need to apply to the entire process. For example, if a workflow has two authorisation stages and the requirement is for two different users to have performed each of these stages then it is only necessary to specify these two stages as exclusive.

When the exclusivity check detects a conflict, for example when a user is not permitted to send a payment as a result of the exclusivity check, then a message to this effect will be reported in the wizard. This is similar to the message displayed when a user does not have permission to perform the step.

- 
- ! If you use exclusivity, it must be for at least two steps in the workflow as there is no value in having a single exclusive step.
-

Any existing permissions will be performed before the exclusivity check. For example, if the Send step would fail the exclusivity check, but the user does not have permission to Send anyway, then it is the existing permission message that will be displayed.

Exclusivity is only enforced when a step is being performed manually. For example, even if all steps in a workflow are set to be exclusive, they can all still be performed automatically by the system user in an end-to-end lights out solution. However, should the automation of any automated step fail for some reason, then the same user would not be able to perform all those steps manually.

Any steps that have been successfully performed automatically by the system user will be considered to have been carried out by a different user in the manual exclusivity check. For example, if Validate, Confirm, Authorise and Send are all exclusive, but Validation was performed automatically then any user will be permitted to perform the Confirm, Authorise and Send steps manually.

## 1. Validation

The first step, as shown above, is **Validation**. Once workflow is selected for use with a payment profile, the **Validation** step is enabled and conducted automatically by default when the profile is initiated. If you wish the step to be included in the exclusivity check, ensure that you check the **Make this step exclusive** box.

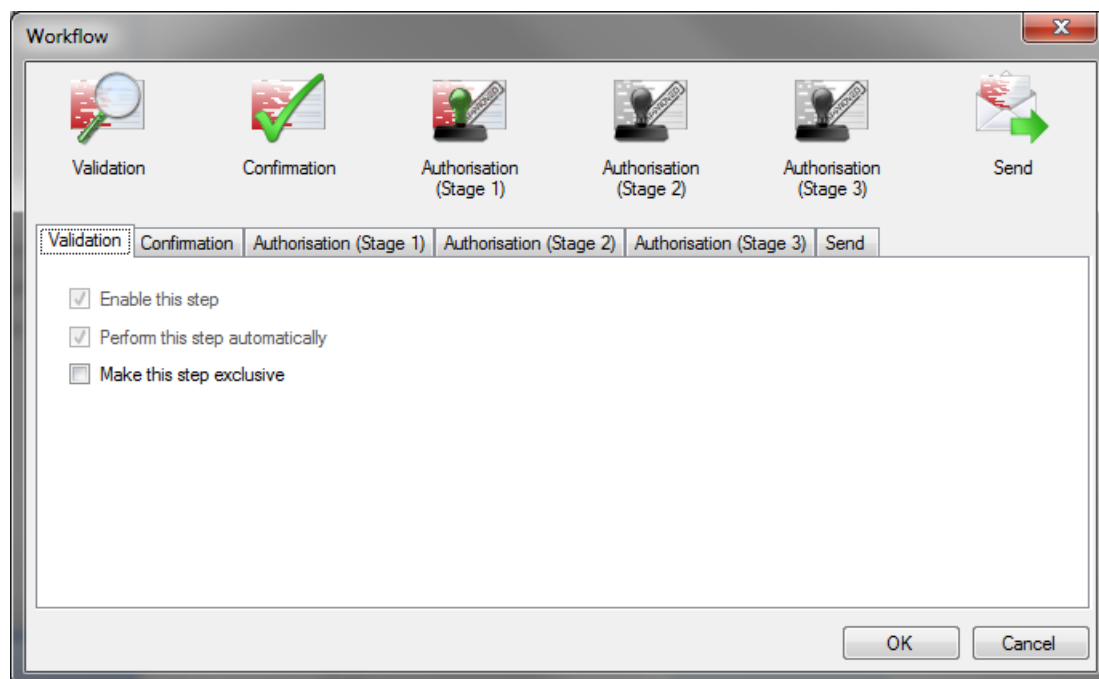


Figure 53: Workflow validation

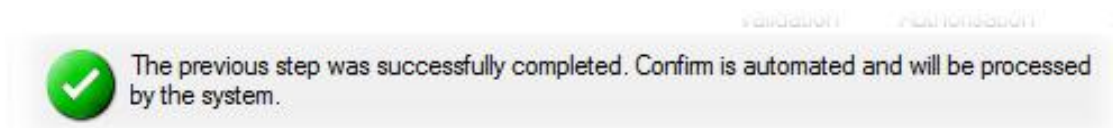
## 2. Confirmation

The second tab is for **Confirmation**. This is used to specify if the step will be manual or automatic and if you wish the process to be halted if warnings or errors are determined at this point. To turn on either or both of these features, click to add a check mark to the boxes provided.

---

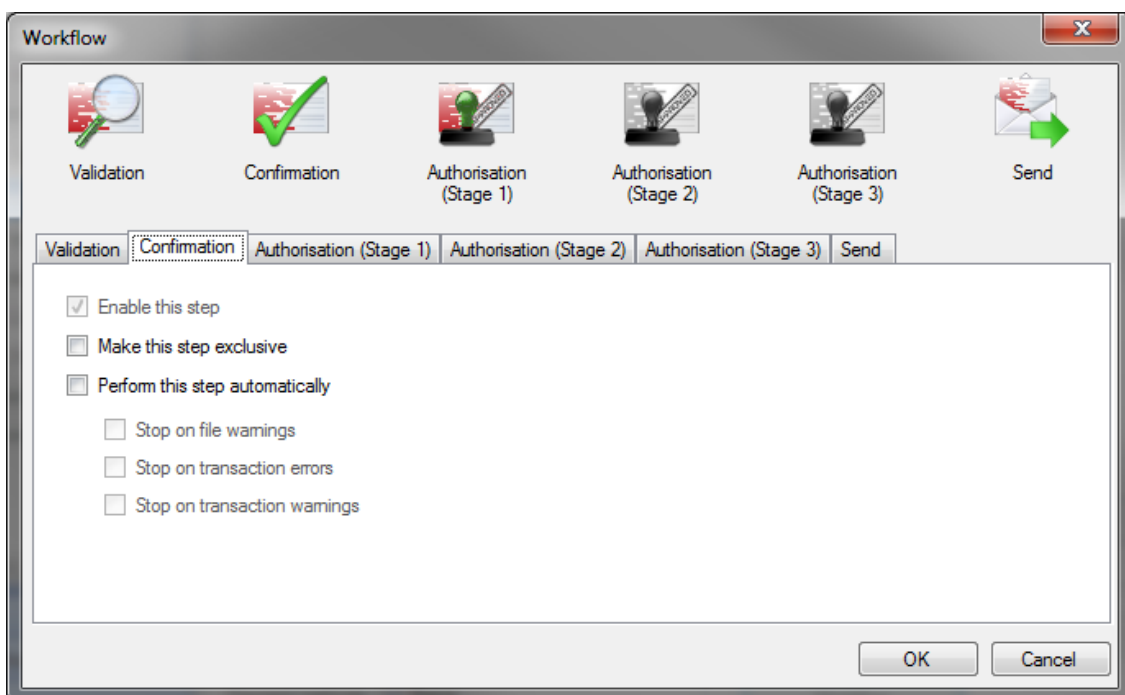
! If you set this step to complete automatically, if the payment wizard is started manually, once validation is complete, the wizard will present a message as shown in the following illustration. The user must then click **Finish** to close the wizard. Further processing, if set to be manual, must be picked up from the *Pending* screen.

---



**Figure 54: Confirm automated message**

The **Confirmation** step is mandatory and is enabled by default. If the step is to be exclusive, check the **Make this step exclusive** box. There is also an option to **Perform this step automatically**. Click in the checkbox to set this up. If this option is selected, you can specify action to be taken in the event that the confirmation cannot take place due to validation issues.



**Figure 55: Workflow confirmation**

Each of the 'Stop' checkboxes specifies a different point at which, if required, the payment process can be stopped. This can be useful in avoiding unnecessary costs incurred through inaccurate or faulty information within the payment file. The payment can be checked to view these errors and/or warnings, through the *Pending* screen.

The 'Stop' checkboxes are provided as follows:

- **Stop on file warnings**  
Example – potentially a duplicate input file
- **Stop on transaction errors**  
Example – zero amounts
- **Stop on transaction warnings**  
Example – invalid accounts

Check the boxes as directed by your procedural requirements.

### 3. **Authorisation**



**Authorisation** is divided into three possible stages; each can be a step in the entire workflow. Depending on your requirements you can enable just a single stage, two stages or all three. All three tabs appear exactly the same. The first stage is enabled by default and is mandatory. You can specify if you wish this to be performed automatically by clicking the relevant checkbox. If the step is to be exclusive, check the **Make this step exclusive** box.

---

! If workflow has not been created for a profile, the default will include a single authorisation step only. In this case the icons for the second and third stages of authorisation appear in monochrome.

---

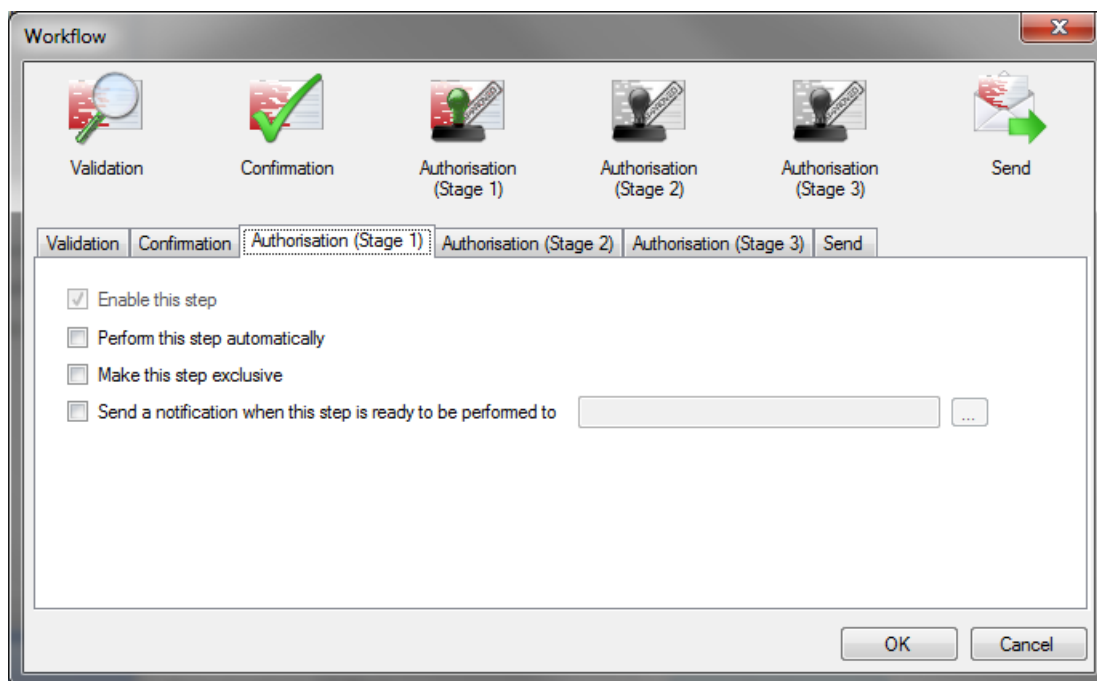


Figure 56: Workflow authorisation

### Automation

Any authorisation step that is set to be automated cannot be signed unless an HSM is licensed and installed (see paragraph 3.10.2).

### Notification

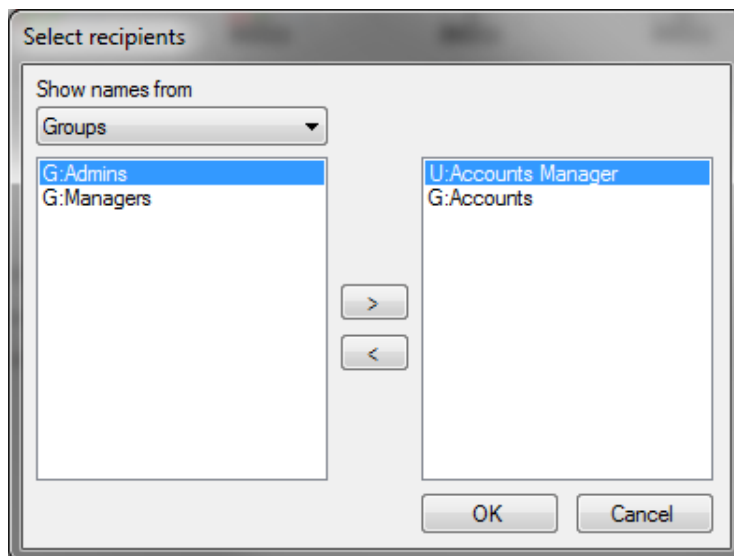
For the first authorisation stage it is possible to specify that a notification is sent automatically to one or more users or groups when the step is ready to be performed.

---

! The system must be licensed for notifications for this feature to be visible.

---

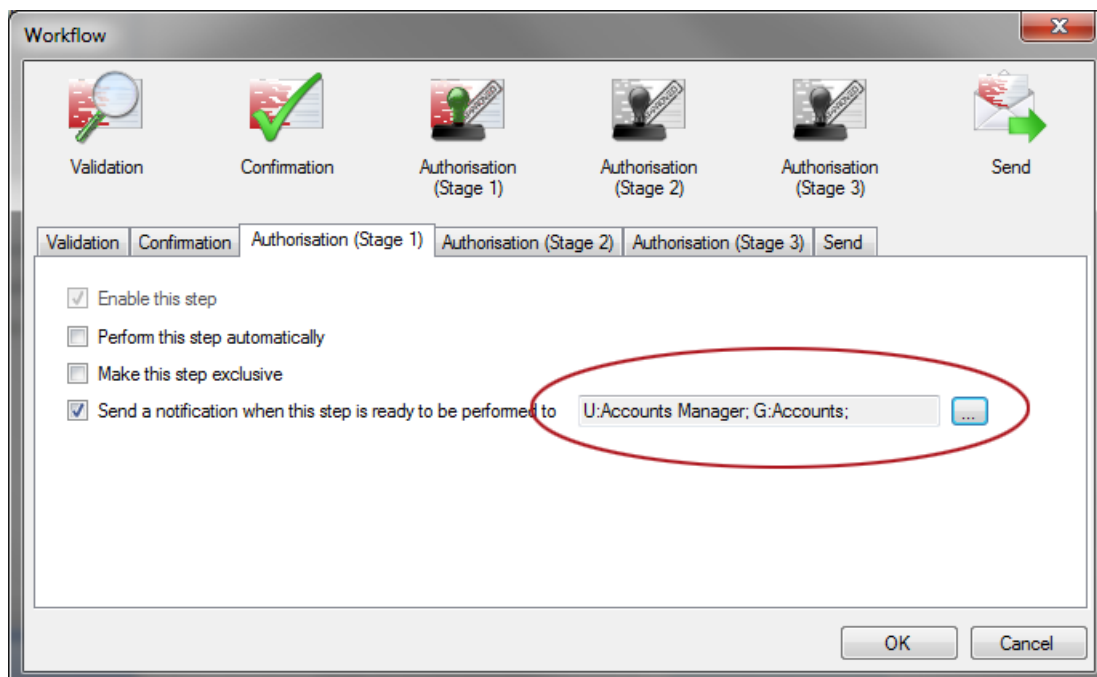
To enable this, check the **Send a notification when this step is ready to be performed to** box. Then click . This will open a *Select Recipients* dialog box.



**Figure 57: Select notification recipients**

The selector at the top allows you to specify if the list displays *Users*, *Groups* or *Contacts*. User names are prefixed with **U**, Groups are prefixed with **G** and Contacts are prefixed with **C**. Select the required name on the left and click **>** to add that name to the list of recipients on the right. To remove a recipient, click the name of the right and click **<** to remove the name.

Click **OK** to close the dialog. The selected names now appear in the box as circled in red in the following illustration:



**Figure 58: Notification recipient list**

The next two authorisation stages are identical to the first, but without the notification option. Both of these authorisation stages are optional. If you wish to include one or both, click in the **Enable this step** checkbox. Once you have done so, you can also specify if you wish this to be performed automatically. You cannot enable **Authorisation (Stage 3)** unless

**Authorisation (Stage 2)** is enabled. Once enabled, the icons for the additional authorisation steps at the top of the form display in colour. If the step is to be exclusive, check the **Make this step exclusive** box.

---

! Signing is a part of authorisation, but can be conducted at any of the three stages. If the final stage is reached without signing, the current user must have a signing solution and be able to sign. This is not specified in the workflow.

---

#### 4. Send

The final step is **Send**. This is mandatory and is enabled by default. You cannot remove it from the workflow, but you can specify that it is automatic if required, but only if an HSM is licensed and installed (see paragraph 3.10.2).

If the step is to be exclusive, check the **Make this step exclusive** box.

The following diagram shows the potential processes involved in workflow:

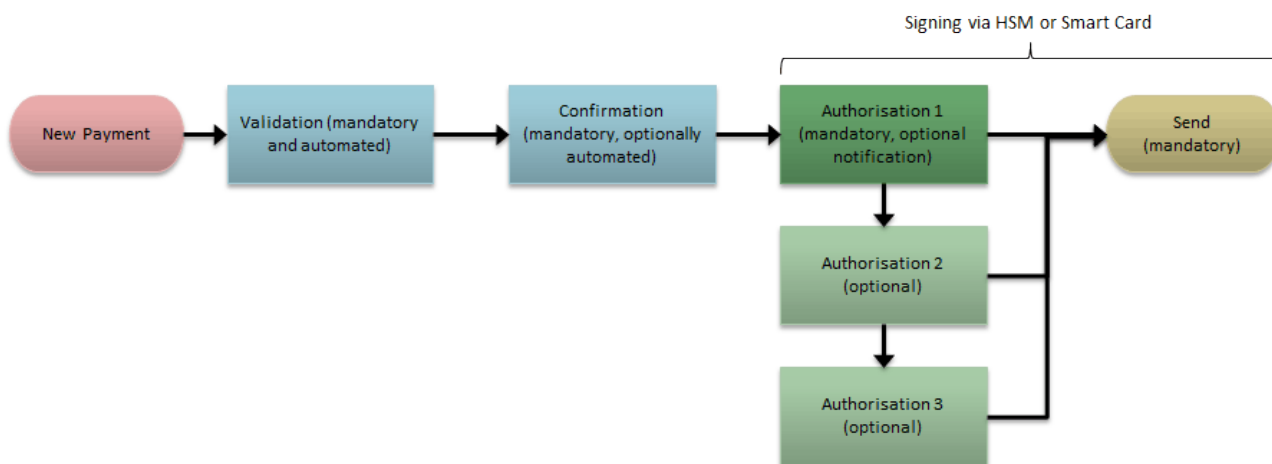


Figure 59: Workflow

### 5.9.3 Schedule

Using scheduling, it is possible to set up profiles to be triggered automatically. Scheduling is configured from within a profile rather than separately and is attached directly to a payment profile where it is designed. In order to set it up, open an existing profile or create a new profile (see paragraph 5.9.1).

---

! If you create a new payment profile, the **Schedule** button is not enabled until you have saved it.

---

To set up the workflow, click the **Schedule** button on the *Profile Description* tab of the *Payment Profile* you wish to add the workflow to. The following form will load:

**Figure 60: Schedule form**

Each payment profile can hold a single schedule but, configured correctly, it will run at the times you specify.

As you create a schedule, if you wish you can copy a previously designed schedule from another profile. For this reason, the name for the schedule should assist in identifying what the schedule represents. Using the **Name** box, type a name for the schedule. You will find it useful to use the name as a short but clear description for possible copying at a later date. This copy facility can be seen in the **Copy From Profile** selector to the right. There is no link existing between the schedules in the two profiles once a copy has been made, so individual changes can be made to each without them being reflected in the other.

---

! Until a **Name** is provided for the schedule, the **OK** button is not enabled.

---

### Copy From Profile

If a schedule has already been established in another profile, you can copy the schedule from this profile. In the profile, click the **Schedule** button and then click the **Copy From Profile** filter at the top of the *Schedule* form. Profiles with schedules will be listed; the name of the profile followed by the name of the schedule. Select the one you wish to use. The form will adjust to show the selected schedule. You can then edit it manually if you wish. You may also wish to change the name that has been completed automatically on import.

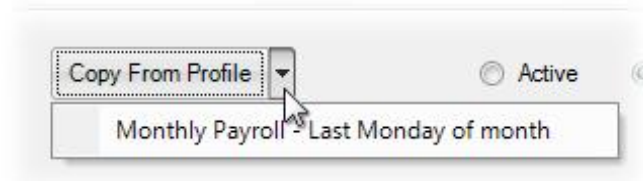


Figure 61: Copy schedule

## On Hold

By default, a new schedule is placed **On Hold** on the right. Only change this to **Active** when you are ready for the schedule to run. You can also change from **Active** to **On Hold** at any time if you wish to pause or stop the schedule for any period, for example when you wish to check, modify or update the schedule.

## Recurrence

The occasions when a schedule can be initiated are extremely flexible. The default option is a single, **One Time Only**. You can make the schedule regular by choosing **Daily**, **Weekly** or **Monthly**. For each of these selected options further selections are presented on the form. Some examples follow:

 Three screenshots of the 'Recurrence' section of a form, each showing a different selection:
 

- Top Screenshot:** The 'Daily' radio button is selected. The 'One Time Only' option is also visible. The 'Every' field is set to '1' and the unit is 'Day(s)'.
- Middle Screenshot:** The 'Weekly' radio button is selected. The 'One Time Only' option is also visible. The 'Every' field is set to '1' and the unit is 'week(s) on'. The days of the week are listed as 'Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday'.
- Bottom Screenshot:** The 'Monthly' radio button is selected. The 'One Time Only' option is also visible. The 'Run' field is set to 'January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September'. The 'on the' field is set to '1st'. The 'First' field is set to 'First' and the 'Monday' field is set to 'Monday'. The 'On non-working days' field is set to 'Do Not Run'.

Figure 62: Schedule recurrence options

The following recurrence patterns are available for selection:

■ *One Time Only*

Run once performs the selected step within one specified window only and does not have a recurrence pattern once that window is complete.

Within the *Run once* schedule a start schedule date selection is mandatory. The default is the current date and the selected date must not be earlier than the current date.

■ *Daily*

The *Daily* schedule option performs the configured tasks every day

There is an option to repeat the schedule every 'x' days where x is configurable from 1 to 999.

■ *Weekly*

The *Weekly* schedule option performs the configured tasks at weekly intervals with an option to repeat the schedule every 'x' weeks where x is configurable from 1 to 999.

There is an option to select the day(s) of the week on which the task runs. Monday – Friday is selected by default.

■ *Monthly*

The *Monthly* schedule performs the configured tasks at monthly intervals with an option to repeat the schedule:

- On fixed day (s) of selected month(s),

OR

- On a relative day (e.g. the last day of the month) of selected month(s).

In addition, you determine if the payment is initiated on a non-working day or not. Non-working days for the scheduler are defined as Sat/Sun and Bank Holidays. The default is not to run, in which case the next available working day will be used instead.

You select the options that you need to use for the payment run based also on what your working setup can accommodate.

## Time

The next area of the form is where you select the time options. The default time for initiating the profile is 09:00. Use the spinner control to adjust this time. Then select the interval at which the system will be polled in order to search for a valid input file. It is recommended that the interval is set to a value that will allow your system to work efficiently. This will depend on your requirements. This can be set to run until a specified end time (which must be later than the start time) or until a valid input file has been found. There is also a checkbox for you to specify that an error be reported if a suitable input file is not found during the time window specified.

Alternatively, you can select the option to run the schedule continuously. This will run automatically at the most frequent interval possible.

- 
- ! For windows that have no end time the start time is considered to be the end time of the window, for example, if the task is set to only run at 09:00 daily then the payment file will be created at 09:00.
- 

Where a scheduled start time is missed, for example if the service was not running at the time of the scheduled start, it will be run as soon as possible on resuming the service.

An option is provided for the schedule to run until the input file has been found. This allows time for the input file to be compiled, but once in the required location, the payment profile will run and then cease the polling schedule. An additional option is provided so that, if any input file is not found during the specified window, then an error will be reported.

## Range of recurrence

Finally, you can specify a **Start Date** from which the recurrence pattern will commence. The default date is the current date.

With the exception of a 'Run Once' schedule pattern, it is possible to select that the schedule will repeat until:

- Further notice (default),

OR

- A specified date. If this is selected, the default value will be the current date. The selected date cannot be earlier than the current date.

If you have chosen a repeat recurrence, you can also select the date on which the schedule will cease by selecting the **End Date** checkbox and specifying, from the provided calendar control, the required date.

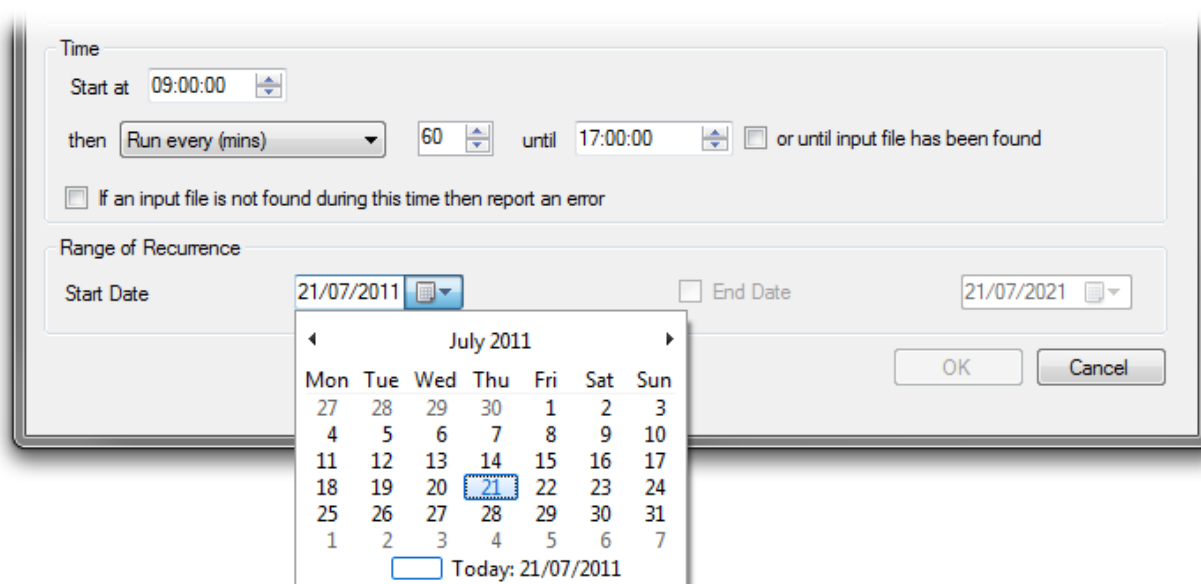


Figure 63: Schedule calendar control

## Set the schedule

Finally, when you wish to, you can click **OK** to save the schedule. However, if you wish to start the schedule running and have not already done so, ensure that you click the **Active** option button at the top right of the form before clicking **OK**. You can reopen the schedule to do this if you prefer.

The schedule is now saved and automatically attached to the profile.

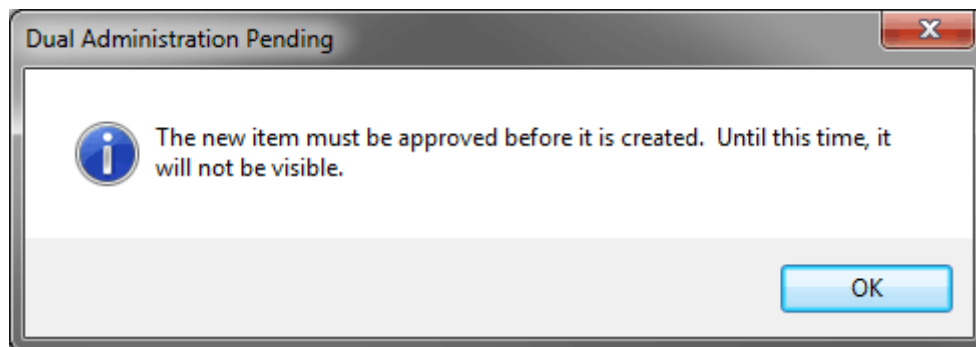
---

! When payments are initiated using the scheduler, the scheduled profile uses the default payment method only and if the profile is configured to prompt for a date then the schedule will use the next available date.

---

### 5.9.4 Dual Administration control

If your system uses Dual Administration, creation of new profiles or amendments to profiles will be held pending Dual Administration confirmation (see paragraph 5.1). At the point at which you save the changes, the following message will be displayed:



**Figure 64: Dual Administration Pending**

When incremental changes are pending the **Dual Administration Changes** menu item is emboldened and the number of pending changes is shown in brackets to the right.

---

! Only users with rights to do so can see the menu item and confirm or accept the changes.

---

## 5.10 File Formats

The file format definition file determines the data that will be interpreted in an input file for payments to be made. A file format is normally created outside Albany ePAY and then imported into Albany ePAY. It determines the layout of the data, i.e. which columns are included and the data type each contains. This ensures that the system can interpret the files submitted for processing. File formats are defined in XML definition files.

✱ It is imperative that the definition matches the data you will be importing. If this is not the case, you will not be able to import any input files.

File formats also need to be set up for contacts to be imported from an external file for a payment library (chapter 7 refers).

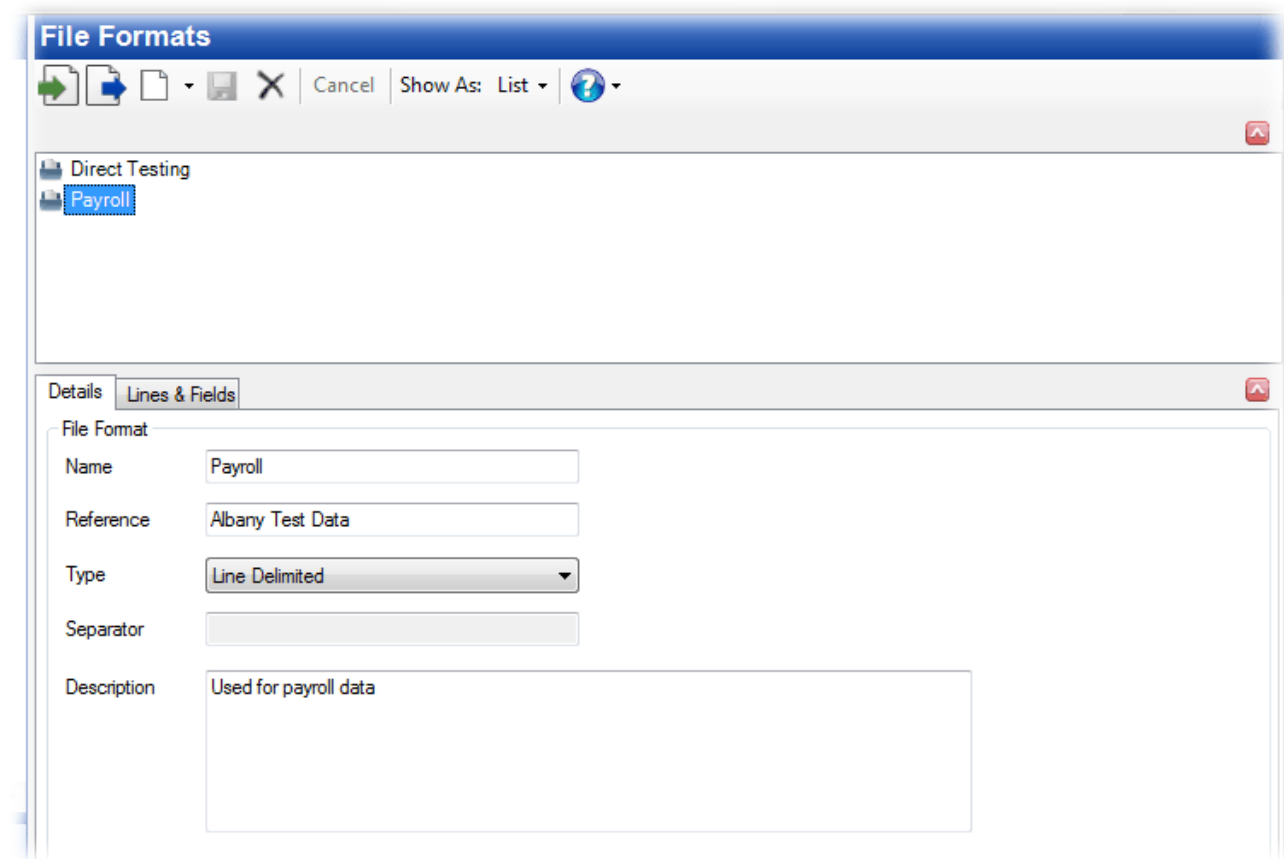
---

! No input file can be processed unless the correct file format has been installed on Albany ePAY.

---

When you select **File Formats** from the **Administration, Payment Settings** navigation menu, the application will present you with a display similar to the example shown in the following illustration:





**Figure 65: File formats**

The file format can then be applied to files from other applications ensuring a clear and correct transfer of data whether from a simple text file or from a more complex dataset.

The **Details** tab supplies the **Name**, **Reference**, **Type**, **Separator** and **Description** of the file format.

The **Lines & Fields** tab contains the detailed structural definitions for the current file format definition. Provision is made for simple editing (see paragraph 5.10.2). The following is a simple example:

**Lines**

Start of New File	Transaction	Contra
True	True	False
*		

**Fields**

Name	Start Position	Length	Value	Format	Mask	Is Last Field
DestinationAccountSortCode	1	8		NN-NN-NN	AlphaNumeric	False
DestinationAccountNumber	11	8			Numeric	False
UserAccountType	21	1			Numeric	False
DestinationAccountName	24	18			AlphaNumeric	False
Amount	42	10		#####	AlphaNumeric	False
Reference	54	18			AlphaNumeric	True
* New field					AlphaNumeric	


Figure 66: Lines &amp; Fields

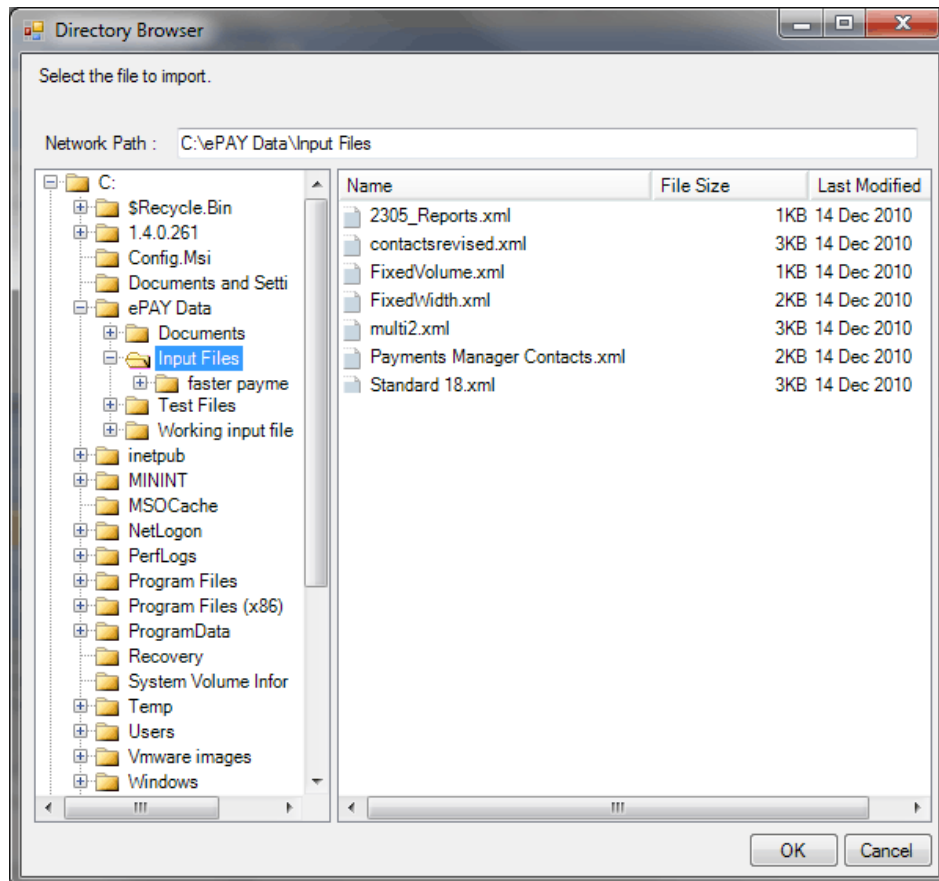
The upper area defines the Lines required. This may be a single line or multiple, depending of the complexity of the format.

For each selected line defined in the upper area, a number of fields are defined in the lower area where the required position of the first character in the field is specified as the **Start Position**, the length of the field in the **Length** column, a required value in the **Value** column, the format in the **Format** column and the **Mask** column indicating the data type.

### 5.10.1 Import file format

Import a file format as follows:

1. Click  to open a *Directory Browser* dialog.
2. Navigate to the location of the file you wish to import, as shown in the following illustration:



**Figure 67: Browse for file format**

3. The dialog will display a folder tree of the computer where the Albany ePAY server software is installed. You will only see XML files displayed in the right hand pane of the dialog as these are the only type of definition file the software will import. The definition files describe the structure of the payment file to be processed. Navigate to the folder containing the definition file describing your payment file. Select the definition file in the right hand pane and click **OK**.

---


! Click **Cancel** at any time to abort the import.

---

The definition file is loaded the details of the file are displayed in the **Details** tab. You can view the lines and fields information for the file definition by switching to the **Lines & Fields** tab.

4. Once you are happy that this is the correct definition file click  to save it.

---

! If the file format you imported already exists on your system, a message will ask if you wish to replace it. If you click **No**, a new file format will be created as a copy of the original. If you click **Yes**, the original will be overwritten when you click .

---

The file format is now listed in the *File Formats* screen.

## 5.10.2 Edit a file format definition

●\* Before editing a working file format definition, it is recommended that you read through this entire topic, make a backup of your database and a backup of the original file format. You can do this by exporting it to another location. See paragraph 5.10.4. It is also recommended to save changes after each one as, at each save, the format is validated. If you make many changes between saves, it is harder to track which items may be invalid.

Although the functionality is currently limited, it is possible to edit the XML file format definitions in Albany ePAY.

! In order that new or modified file formats are valid, it is recommended that you are clearly familiar with the input files and their generic contents that will be mapped into Albany ePAY using the file format definition. Read this section and the associated Appendix D: File Format Definitions on page 168 of this document carefully before making changes unless you are very familiar with the process.

A file format follows a three tier hierarchy:

### 1. The Definition Element

This is the parent element that describes the overall file. This is visible in the **Details** tab for a selected File Format. Depending on the file format type, some of the boxes displayed may be editable. File format types can be:

- FixedWidth
- LineDelimited
- Delimited

A filtered list is available for selection of one of these types. Click the arrow to the right to select from the list.

! If the file format type selected is *Delimited*, the **Separator** box will need to include a single valid character to indicate the separation between fields. Non printable characters are not supported. The **Separator** box is disabled for *FixedWidth* or *LineDelimited* file format types.

### 2. The Line Element

Within the definition element there will be one or more line elements, each of which describes a single line within the definition. These are located on the **Lines & Fields** tab in the **Lines** area.

### 3. The Field Element

Within any single line element there will be one or more field elements, each of which describes a field within the line.

## Add a new Line or Field

If you wish to add a new line or a new field to any existing definition, click in the grey line at the bottom of the current list. Default values may be entered. Attributes vary depending on the file format type selected in the **Details** tab. Until you make a change to the attributes, the new row is not committed. If you wish to keep all the defaults you must therefore make a change and revert back when a grey row appears below the new one.

In the **Lines** element, for each attribute, a filter is provided for the selection of either *True* or *False* in each case. Click in this line and select the values, *True* or *False* for each attribute as required.

In the **Fields** element click anywhere on the grey row. Depending on the file format type, the attributes will differ, but it is recommended that you use the filters provided for those attributes that provide them to select valid values. You can also type your own name for fields, if required. This

may be useful for data in the input files that has no relevance. However, attribute values other than those provided in the filter cannot be processed by Albany ePAY and will be ignored.

Regardless of file format type, columns in either of the tables in the **Lines & Fields** tab cannot be sorted.

- 
- ! Some of the **Names** provided in the filter list hold an automatic **Mask** which will be selected automatically.
- 

Complete the remaining attributes as required.

- 
- ! Limitations on correct file format may present error messages. Albany ePAY recognises a number of fields and can interpret and deal with the data. Other fields can be created for reference, but Albany ePAY will ignore their contents.
- 

### Delete Line or Field

If you need to remove a row from the Lines or Fields lists, move your mouse pointer to the far right column. The **X** symbol will appear. Click this symbol.

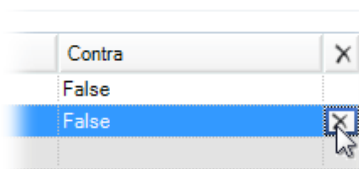


Figure 68: Delete element row

A message will request confirmation for the deletion. Click **Yes** to proceed or **No** to retain the row.

### Line order

For any file format, the order of the lines in the grid can be changed, with the caveat that the transaction row must be last and the contra row must be the penultimate in the list, i.e. directly above the transaction row.

To change the row order, position the mouse pointer over the button on the far left of the row. A box will appear around the button. Click and hold to grab the row and then drag and drop it to its new position. If the rules described above are broken, an error message will load.

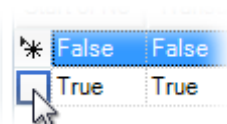


Figure 69: Row reordering

### Delimited field order

For delimited file formats it is possible to move field definition rows up/down to determine the order within the input definition. This is essential for the successful validation of delimited files where the position of the field determines where the system will look for it in the input file. For example, if an input file contains the destination sort code, followed by the account number, followed by the amount, all separated by commas, then the definition must order the fields in the same sequence so that the correct values are identified in their respective positions.

To change the order, position the mouse over the button to the left of the row to be moved and drag and drop it to the new location. Refer to Figure 69.

### Fixed width Start Position

For fixed width and line delimited input files, the start and end positions are the crucial factors in identifying data and therefore each time a record is saved, the fields for these types will be re-ordered by the start positions. Moving those rows manually is not possible. The **Start Position** acts as an index for all other fields, so if you change the **Start Position** value, when saved, the order will update automatically.

---

! In the event that you change the **Start Position** you must also ensure that you make allowance for the **Length** so that attributes do not overlap in the definition.

---

### Save the modifications

It is recommended to save regularly as, at each save, the format is validated. If you make many changes between saves, it is harder to track which items may be invalid.


Click  to save changes.

### 5.10.3 Create a new file format

When you create a new file format definition, you can choose to create an entirely blank definition or from a copy of a definition that is already on the system. The advantage of the second option is that the copied definition is already valid and with many of the attributes already set, it should save you time, allowing you to edit and save it with a new name. For this reason, Albany recommends that you use this approach.

#### Existing file format copy

To start your new file format as a copy of an existing, valid file format, ensure that the original is already imported into your system. If you cannot see the file format you want to copy in the list in the upper pane, you will need to import it before you can create the copy. Paragraph 5.10.1 describes the import procedure.

Once the file format you wish to copy is visible, it will be available. Click the filter arrow to the right of . A flyout menu will assist in your selection, as shown below:

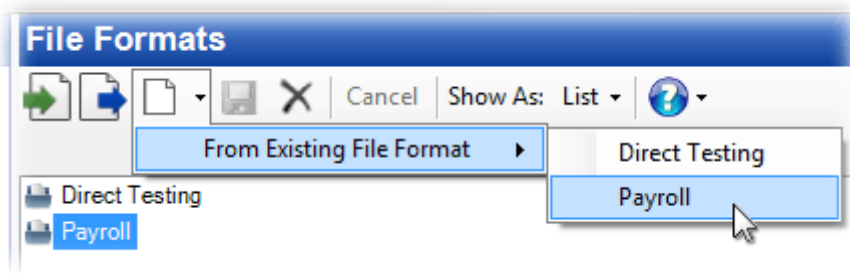
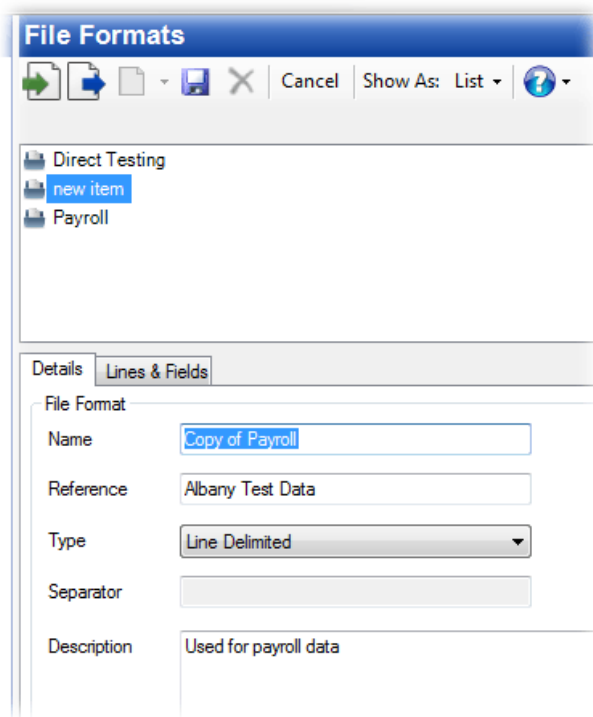


Figure 70: Create file format from copy

All the file formats on your system are listed in the flyout menu. Select the one you want to copy. The new copy is created immediately as shown in the following illustration:




**Figure 71: File format copy**

Ensure that you start by changing the default Name for the new file format. At this point it may be useful to save the copy before you start to make amendments.


Change the elements as described in paragraph 5.10.2. It is recommended to save regularly as, at each save, the changed data is validated. If you make many changes between saves, it becomes harder to track which items may be invalid.

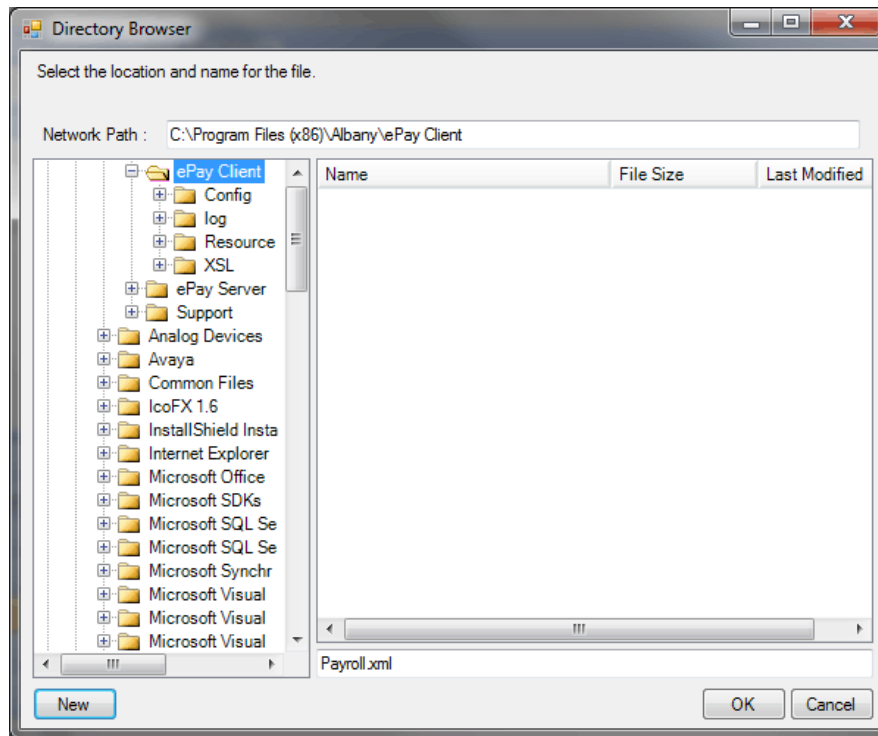
### Blank file format

Albany does not recommend creating a completely blank file format as does not include any valid information by default. However, if you wish to do so, click , excluding the filter arrow to the right of the button. You must complete all the details and have a full understanding of the attributes you need to include for your selected file format type. Albany suggests that you plan the design carefully before beginning in consultation with the information provided in Appendix D: File Format Definitions and paragraph 5.10.2.

#### 5.10.4 Export file format

A file format can be exported from the system as follows:

1. Select the file you wish to export.
2. Click  to open a *Directory Browser* dialog.



**Figure 72: File format export**

3. Select the folder in which you wish to store the exported file format.
4. Click **OK** to save the file.

---

! Click **Cancel** at any time without clicking **OK** to abort the export.

---



## 5.11 Originating Accounts

Originating accounts reference data is setup in the *Originating Accounts* screen. To access this screen, in the navigation area select **Administration** and under **Payment Settings** select **Originating Accounts**. An example of this screen is shown in the following illustration:


Figure 73: Originating accounts

### 5.11.1 Usage information

To view which payment profiles use an originating account, navigate to the *Originating Accounts* screen. Select the originating account record you wish to check and click on the **Usage Information** tab.


### 5.11.2 Add originating account


Select **Administration**, and under **Payment Settings**, select **Originating Accounts** to view the *Originating Accounts* screen.

Click ; a new item is created.

The following table provides information to assist you in completing the **Details** tab in the lower pane:

Item	Description
------	-------------

Item	Description
<b>Account name</b>	Enter a clear <b>Account name</b> in this box for the originating account. Text entered here is automatically converted to upper case and will accept a maximum of 18 characters.
<b>Description</b>	Type a meaningful <b>Description</b> for the Originating Account in this box. As the account name is limited in size, this can be very helpful as it is not uncommon for a single organisation to hold several Originating Accounts for different purposes. This is mandatory, you must provide a description.
<b>Sort code</b>	<p>Enter the six digit Originating Account sort code. Whilst branch sort codes are commonly displayed in the form XX-XX-XX, you <u>must</u> enter the sort code as six consecutive digits (0-9) with <u>no</u> hyphens or spaces. This information will be validated in combination with the account number against the Bank Account Validation Database that is a part of Albany ePAY.</p> <p>! Some banks may use an older style sort code with a different number of digits from the standard. To ensure that you enter the sort code correctly, check with your department if this is the case.</p>
<b>Account number</b>	<p>Enter the account number for the Originating Account. This is normally eight digits. This information will be validated in combination with the sort code against the application's internal sort code and account database before you can save the record.</p> <p>! Some banks may use an older style account number with a different number of digits from the standard. To ensure that the account number is entered correctly, check with your department if this is the case.</p> <p>Each Originating Account must have a unique sort code and account number. If details are duplicated from another originating account,  will be displayed beside the <b>Account number</b> box. Check and correct the data to proceed.</p>
<b>Account type</b>	<p>By default, the <b>Account type</b> is assumed to be Individual. However, if your organisation uses a bank account structure, perhaps for limiting expenditure, you can create the structure here. For the main account that is the 'container' for the structure, click the filter arrow to the right and select <i>Group Main</i>. Enter the account details as above.</p> <p>! This box can only be set when an account is created, and may not be subsequently edited. Should you set a value from this field and find it is incorrect, you will have to delete the account and re-create it with the correct settings. However, if the group main account already contains individual group accounts, you will encounter further problems. For this reason it is recommended that you create the account structure with extreme care so that you will not need to edit it later.</p> <p>Once a main account has been created, grouped individual accounts can be created.</p>
<b>Main account</b>	The <b>Main account</b> box is only enabled when the account type is set to <b>Group Individual</b> , and allows you to specify which Main account the Group Individual account is to be aggregated into where more than one main account has been created.


When you completed entry and selection of all the correct information, click  to save the record for the new account.

### 5.11.3 Usage information

Once you have created your new account and allocated it to be used by one or more Payment Profiles, you can check back later to the **Usage Information** tab to identify which Payment Profiles use which accounts, however, be aware then when the Originating Account is first set up, there will be no **Usage Information** available.

### 5.11.4 Edit an originating account

To access the *Originating Accounts* screen, select **Administration** and under **Payment Settings**, select **Originating Accounts**. Select the originating account record you wish to edit. The properties of the account selected are now displayed in the **Details** tab.

Once you have made the modifications to the information required, click  to save the edited record for the originating account.


---

! You cannot edit the account type. This is set when the originating account is created and cannot be changed.

---

If you wish to abandon changes to the information click **Cancel** at any time. The application will confirm you wish to cancel your changes. Click **Yes** to abandon your changes and **No** to return to your editing.

### 5.11.5 Remove an originating account

To access the *Originating Accounts* screen, select **Administration** and under **Payment Settings**, select **Originating Accounts**. Select the originating account record you wish to remove. Click  to delete the selected originating account. The application will confirm you wish to delete the account. Click **Yes** to delete the account. If you attempt to delete an originating account which is used by a current payment profile, the application will prevent this and notify you of the fact. See also paragraph 5.11.3 Usage information.

## 5.12 Bacs Limits

To add a Bacs Limits record, select **Administration**, and under **Payment Settings**, select **Bacs Limits**.

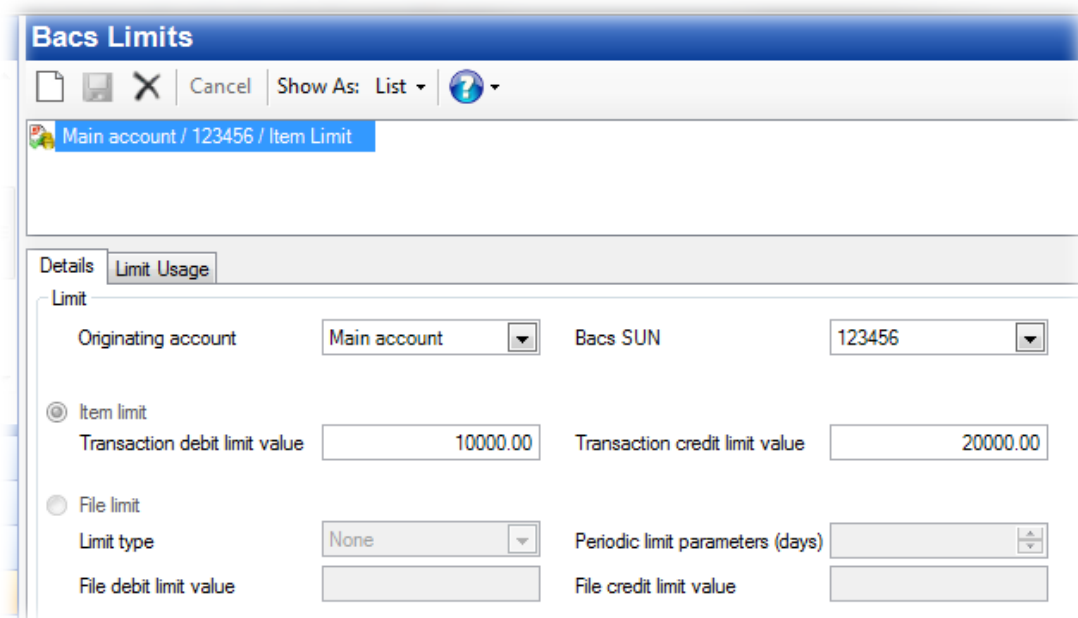



Figure 74: Bacs Limits Screen

Click ; the application creates a new item in the item list below.

Select the originating account to which you wish to apply limits from the originating account drop-down list in the **Details** tab. Select the **Bacs SUN** to associate with the originating account from the

**Bacs SUN** list. Click to apply either **Item limits** or **File limits** using the options. Item limits apply on a per transaction basis for individual transactions, there for if you select **Item limits**, you must enter values for credit and debit limits. If you select **File limit**, select a period over which the limits will operate from the **Limit type** list. If you select *Periodic*, you must then specify the number of days from the adjacent **Periodic limit parameters (days)** box. Then enter the debit and credit file limit values.

**Figure 75: Bacs limits**

When you have entered the information, click to save the record for the new Bacs Limit.

The *Bacs Limits* screen includes the following settings for edit:


Item	Description
<b>Originating Account</b>	This includes a list containing a list of the originating accounts currently existing within the database from which to select.
<b>Bacs SUN</b>	This includes a list containing a list of the Bacs SUNs currently existing within the database.
<b>Item limit</b>	This option permits limits set on each item. If you have selected Item limit (default) the File limit boxes will be disabled.
<b>Transaction debit limit value</b>	Click to edit the limit value for debit transactions.
<b>Transaction credit limit value</b>	Click to edit the limit value for credit transactions.
<b>File limit</b>	This option permits limits set on a file, aggregated per file. If you have selected File limit the Item limit boxes will be disabled.
<b>Limit type</b>	This includes a list containing limit periods to select from as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Daily</li> <li>▪ Weekly</li> <li>▪ Monthly</li> <li>▪ Periodic</li> </ul>
<b>Periodic limit parameters (days)</b>	If you select periodic as the limit type, you must specify the number of days of which you wish the period to consist, using the spin box provided.
<b>File debit limit value</b>	Click to edit the aggregated file debit limit value for the limit type.
<b>File credit limit value</b>	Click to edit the aggregated file credit limit value for the limit type.

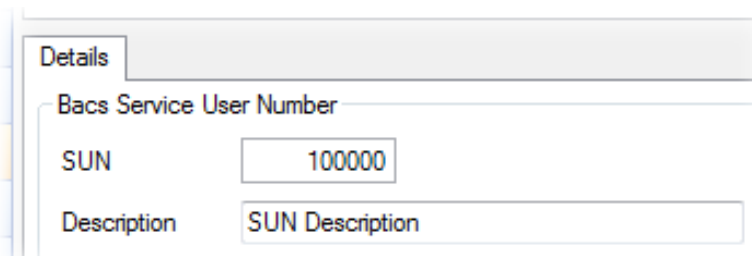
The **Limit Usage** tab provides details of where the limits have been applied. For each item selected, the remaining credit and debit limits are shown at the bottom of the tab.

## 5.13 Bacs SUN Information

The Bacs Service User Number (SUN) is a unique six digit number allocated by a Sponsoring Bank. It identifies you to Bacs and is normally linked to one or more applications. The SUN is an integral part of sending payments through Bacs. It is used for validation of you as an authorised user of the BACSTEL-IP service.

- 
- ! Some payment methods such as RBS Bankline and HSBC Export do not require a SUN. In these cases, once processed by Albany ePAY, the file is passed back to the relevant system without a SUN.
- 

To add a Bacs SUN, select **Administration**, and under **Payment Settings**, select **Bacs SUN Information**. The *Bacs SUN Information* screen is then displayed on the right. Click . A new item is created in the item list below. Enter the SUN provided by your Bank into the **SUN** box in the **Details** tab, and change the description of the newly created SUN displayed in the **Description** box, to something more meaningful:



Details

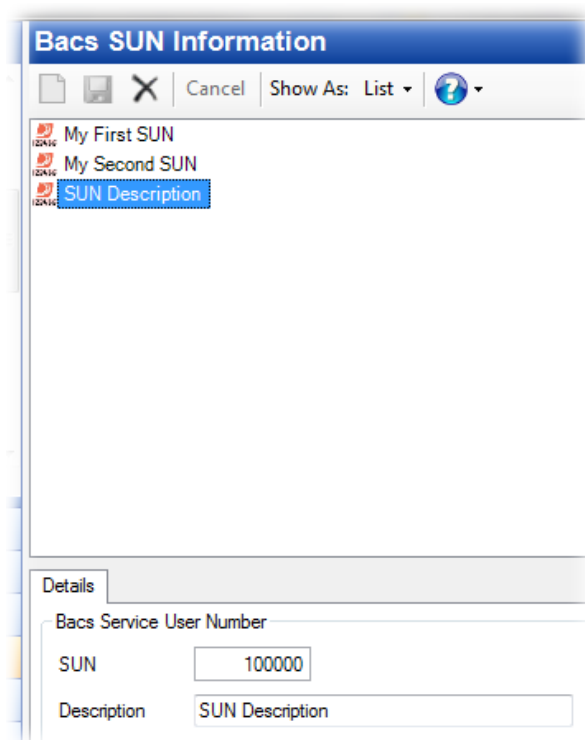
Bacs Service User Number

SUN 100000

Description SUN Description

Figure 76: Bacs SUN example

When you have entered the information click  to save the record for the new SUN:



Bacs SUN Information

Cancel Show As: List ?

My First SUN

My Second SUN

SUN Description

Details

Bacs Service User Number

SUN 100000

Description SUN Description

Figure 77: Bacs SUN information

## 5.14 Payment Profile Notification Templates

In order that notification of errors and workflow completion can be provided, a separate notification configuration tool is used. This is then attached to respective customer payment profiles.

To set this up, Select **Administration** and under **Payment Settings**, select **Payment Profile Notification Templates**.

The *Payment Profile Notification Templates* screen provides a mechanism to set up a system facilitating the reporting of errors and workflow completion. The following is an example of the screen:

Figure 78: Payment profile notification templates

### 5.14.1 Creating a new template

To create a new *Template*, follow these steps:

1. Click to create a new template object. The new item will appear as a default **Template name** in the **Details** tab in the lower panel.
2. Overtyping or replace this name with the name you wish to use.
3. You can now choose if you want to provide notifications for errors and/or completion.
4. For error notification you need to specify which groups and/or users should be notified in the event of an error. Click to the right of the **Notify on file error** box. This will open the *Pick Recipients* dialog where you can select the individual users, groups or contacts that are to receive notification of any file errors.

---

! If a valid email address has not been set up for any user nominated to receive notifications (either individually or as part of a specified group), an error message will inform you of the fact when you save the template.

---

5. Select User, Group or Contact from the **Show Names** from box. The list below will adjust accordingly. Select the identity of the user, group or contact you wish to add from the list on the left and click the **>** button to add it to the list on the right. To add more than one item at a time, hold down the **Ctrl** key as you click each item to select them and then click **>**.



---

! It is important not to have email notifications sent out unnecessarily. Check that the correct people or groups will be notified in each instance.


---

! To remove an item from the list on the right, click the item (or items, using the **Ctrl** key) and click **<**.

---

6. When you are satisfied that the list is correctly populated, click **OK**. The name(s) of groups or users you selected now appear in the **Notify on file error** box. User names are prefixed with **U**, Group names with **G** and Contact names with **C**.
7. For completion notification click  to the right of the **Notify on workflow completion** box. Repeat steps 4 and 5 to add names to the recipients list.
8. When you are ready, click  to save the template.

### 5.14.2 Delete template

If, for any reason, you need to remove a template completely, click . You will be asked to confirm deletion. Click **Yes** to confirm and complete deletion. The template is removed. Click **No** to cancel deletion and retain the template.

### 5.14.3 Attach to a profile

Once the template has been created, it can be attached to any profile. Refer to page 43 for information.

## 6 Payments

Payments are the essential purpose of Albany ePAY. Payments can be inward; collections or debits, where sums are transferred from each external account to the internal account such as subscriptions, or outward; credits, where sums are paid from the internal account to each external account such as a payroll or payments to third parties for goods or services. For clarity in this document, payments and collections are referred to as payments, regardless of direction.

The way in which a payment is compiled and conducted is determined by:

- Payment profile – paragraph 5.9
- Workflow – paragraph 5.9.2
- Permissions – paragraph 5.7
- Scheduling – paragraph 5.9.3

The software allows a payment profile with associated workflow to be initiated in respect of a payment process. Access is provided through a wizard or, once the payment process has been initiated, through a pending grid.

The Payments area is displayed by default on opening the application. If another area is selected, switch to this area by selecting **Payments** in the navigation area. This provides access to the various functions within the application corresponding to the stages involved in the payment process.

From here you can start a new payment; access a pending payment, i.e. one that is in progress and is awaiting further action; view payments that have been sent and view completed payments.

### 6.1 Processing wizard overview

The Processing Wizard provides a simple to use manner of specifying and sending payments, either via the Bacs three day submission service, or via the Faster Payments. It leads you through the process, step by step, and allows review of what you are going to send in detail before committing. The process begins with validation of the source information to ensure that there are no errors which would cause the submission to fail at a transaction level or worse, at file level, saving time and money. Checks are made as to the validity of the financial data, and also the transaction submission date.

Once the payment file has been validated and that validation has been confirmed, the processing wizard will seek authorisation to proceed with sending the submission. This authorisation is performed using either a Smart Card system or a Hardware Security Module (HSM).

After the submission has been sent, you can Download Advices and Returns from your Clearing and Settlement Mechanism (CSM) relating to your submission.

The sequence of steps described in this help assumes that you have permissions configured to perform all the processing steps. However, it is understood that different business security models may involve several individuals within an organisation being required to complete the process, each individual only having permission to execute one or possibly two steps in the process.

#### Exclusivity

In addition to the effect of permissions, as an enhancement to security, the ability to prevent the same user from performing every step in the workflow for payments is included and may have been set up on the payment profile in use.

The result of this is that, where two or more steps in the payment process have been setup to be exclusive at least one of the specified steps must be performed by a different user.

Any existing permissions will be performed before the exclusivity check. For example, if the Send step would fail the exclusivity check, but the user does not have permission to Send anyway, then it is the existing permission message that will be displayed.



Exclusivity is only enforced when a step is being performed manually. For example, even if all steps in a workflow are set to be exclusive, they can all still be performed automatically by the system user in an end-to-end lights out solution. However, should the automation of each exclusive automated step fail for some reason, then those steps could not all be performed manually by the same user.

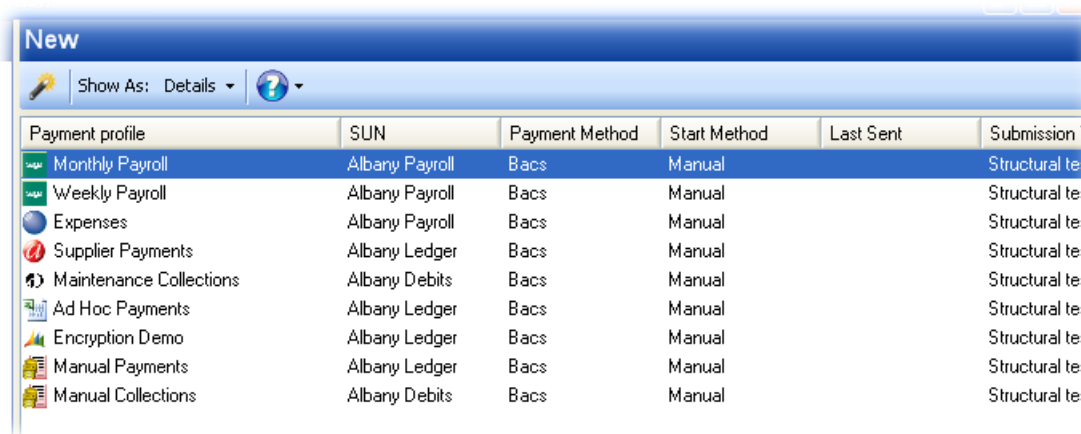
Any steps that have been successfully performed automatically by the system user will be considered to have been carried out by a different user in the manual exclusivity check. For example, if Validate, Confirm, Authorise and Send are all exclusive, but Validation was performed automatically then any user will be permitted to perform the Confirm, Authorise and Send steps manually.

### Wizard process order

Step	Description and Pre-requisites
Start Payment Process	In this step you select the Payment Profile you wish to process.
Prepare for Validation	In this step you select the payment run where applicable and payment date. The selection of payment method will only be applicable for Payment Profiles with multiple payment methods enabled.
Validate	In this step the wizard will analyse the financial data and validate it against its internal rules.
Confirm	When validation is complete, you preview all the settings and confirm agreement.
Authorise	This step can include from one to three stages, depending on the configuration. Normally signing will be required at one of the authorisation stages. If signing is required by the payment method, signing must be conducted at one of the authorisation steps. Please ensure that you have your Smart Card and its associated Personal Identification Number to hand as you will need them to complete the step, unless an HSM is licensed and installed (see paragraph 3.10.2).
Send	In this step you will send the payment file to your Clearing and Settlement Mechanism (CSM). If you use a Smart Card system, please ensure that you have your Smart Card and its associated PIN ready as you will need them to complete the step, unless an HSM is licensed and installed (see paragraph 3.10.2).

## 6.2 Wizard

Navigate to the **Payments** area and click **New** in the **Payments** menu on the left or click the *New* link on the right. You may see one or several Payment Profiles set up for you to use. These can be arranged as icons or as a detailed list:



Payment profile	SUN	Payment Method	Start Method	Last Sent	Submission
Monthly Payroll	Albany Payroll	Bacs	Manual		Structural te
Weekly Payroll	Albany Payroll	Bacs	Manual		Structural te
Expenses	Albany Payroll	Bacs	Manual		Structural te
Supplier Payments	Albany Ledger	Bacs	Manual		Structural te
Maintenance Collections	Albany Debits	Bacs	Manual		Structural te
Ad Hoc Payments	Albany Ledger	Bacs	Manual		Structural te
Encryption Demo	Albany Ledger	Bacs	Manual		Structural te
Manual Payments	Albany Ledger	Bacs	Manual		Structural te
Manual Collections	Albany Debits	Bacs	Manual		Structural te

Figure 79: Payment profiles detailed list

### 6.2.1 Validation database

While you are using the wizard, sort codes and account number types will be validated against a sort code database. This database should be updated once a month on a schedule, however, if the connection cannot be established for this to take place, you may see the following bar appear on the screen:



Figure 80: Validation database update required


Details on updating the database is described in paragraph 4.7.1 and scheduling for automatic update is described in paragraph 4.7.4.

---

! If you cannot update the database successfully, refer to paragraph 11.9 for troubleshooting help.

---

### Run payment profile

To run one of these profiles, either double click the profile you wish to run or select it and click . This will start the wizard to take you through all the steps.

When the payment profile is initiated, the location of the payment file, specified in the profile, is accessed and the information it contains is read by the system to determine the detail for the payment. This may or may not include library detail (see chapter 7), depending on the profile.

The input file is copied to a processing directory as soon as Albany ePAY picks it up and before it is imported (either through the scheduler, or through manual validation). The copied file is renamed by joining the payment profile name and the current date/time to the file name. This ensures that the filename is unique in the processing folder. The original file may be deleted or left in the original location depending on the settings (described in Appendix A: Payment profile processing rules).

### 6.2.2 Validation

Validation is the first of several steps in the payment process. Some of these steps have more than one stage, but the main sections are indicated in the top right of the wizard forms, Validate, Authorise and Send. The current section is illustrated in colour, while previous and future steps are illustrated in black and white.

## 1. Select Options

Unless automated, to start the validation process, you need to specify the parameters or options for the payment. These include the **Payment Method** and the **Payment Date**.

! If the payment profile has been initiated automatically using a schedule, validation is conducted automatically. In this case the payment method will always be the default and the payment date will be the next available.

The screenshot shows a 'Payroll' window with a 'Validation' tab. It contains two main sections: 'Select Payment Method' and 'Select Payment Date'.

**Select Payment Method:** A dropdown menu shows 'Bacs' as the selected method.

**Select Payment Date:** Two calendar views are shown for December 2010 and January 2011. In the December 2010 calendar, the 27th and 28th are highlighted in red, and the 29th, 30th, and 31st are highlighted in blue. The January 2011 calendar shows dates from the 3rd to the 31st.

**Payment Date:** A text box shows '24 Dec 2010'.

**Key:** A legend on the right explains the indicators:
 

- Today (yellow box with '1')
- Available day (white box with '1')
- Non processing day (red box with '1')
- Payment date (blue box with '1')

At the bottom of the window are buttons for 'Help', 'Validate', and 'Cancel'.

Figure 81: Validate

## 2. Payment Method

Select the **Payment Method** from the box provided. There may be one or more to choose from. This may be just *Bacs*, but may also include *Faster Payments* or another, such as *RBS Bankline*. Only one payment method can be transmitted at a time.

## 3. Payment Date

Next look at the **Select Payment Date** area. A **Key** on the right explains the types of indicators, but do note that today's date is clearly indicated. The illustration above shows a Bacs three day payment. Submissions can be set up as early as 30 days in advance which ever payment method has been selected. This is indicated in bold text. A Bacs submission takes three working days. The earliest date for submission is assumed to be the current

date, as long as it is a working day. The date of payment is indicated in blue. FPS completes within 24 hours, normally much less. Other payment methods will have their own rules. For example, RBS Bankline is able to process payments within 24 hours.

You will see that the earliest payment date is now today, but you can still select, for either payment method, a date that will allow payment up to 30 days ahead unless the payment method specifies otherwise, such as RBS Bankline which will only accept the current date or the next working day. This is indicated on the calendar to assist you in selecting an alternative date, if required.

---

! If you can plan ahead you should do so, particularly if you want processing to take place at a busy time of the month, as it may help to avoid bottlenecks on the day of payment.

---

To select a date other than the default, click on it in the calendar. The new date appears on the right above the **Key**.

Once you have selected the payment date, click the **Validate** button in the bottom right of the wizard to move to the next step in the validation process.

### 6.2.3 Confirm

Once you have clicked the **Validation** button, the form will change to show the progress of validation where account numbers and sort codes are checked against the validation database. You wait while reports are generated to show any errors.

By default, confirmation is automatic. However, depending on settings, if there are warnings or errors, the process will halt. The following illustration is an example of the form that will display from the wizard or from the pending screen in the event of a validation failure:

---

! Once the file has been validated, the wizard displays the file path and the name of the working input file in the status bar unless this feature has been disabled.

---

Company Payroll - Validation

**Confirm validation**

Validation → Authorisation → Send

**Submission Details**

Submission Type: Structural Test

Payment Date: 30 Nov 2011      Payment Method: Bacs

Reference: 000003      Service User Number: 123456      [Reports](#)

**Payment File**

**File OK**      [Details](#)

**Transactions**

**There were transaction errors**      [Details](#)

**Accepted:**

	Count	Values (GBP)
Credits	1	1.01
Debits	3	3.03
DDIs	3	n/a
<b>Total</b>	<b>7</b>	

**Errors**    Warnings    Source

	Count	Values (GBP)
Credits	1	0.00
Debits	1	0.00
DDIs	1	n/a
Other	1	0.00
<b>Total</b>	<b>4</b>	

These transactions will NOT be included.

[Help](#)      [Confirm](#)      [Cancel](#)

Bacs | 22:30 | 4 MULTI | C:\Data Files\Input

**Figure 82: Confirm validation**

Where there are errors or warnings, as shown above, you can examine the issues and, if necessary, make changes to the input file. Click the **Details** button to the right of the error or warning symbol to view the information. See also paragraph 6.4.

Errors and warnings can include the following:

- File warnings
 

An example of this might be where ePAY identifies a potentially duplicated payment file that has been previously submitted.
- Transaction errors
 

An example of this might be an input file requesting payments for zero values.
- Transaction warnings
 

An example of this might be payments requested for bank account details that are not supplied in the verification database.

If you wish to continue with the payment without changes, you can click the **Confirm** button, but you need to be sure that this will not impact on payments that may be excluded as the result of incorrect information in the input file, such as invalid employee bank account data on a payroll where the affected employee may not be paid.

In the event you are processing a payment using a separately licensed payment method such as RBS Bankline, the screen may be slightly different, as the following illustration demonstrates. Note that the Submission Type is indicated as “Bankline export file” and there is no Service User Number supplied as this is not applicable.

**Confirm validation**

Validation → Authorisation → Send

**Submission Details**

Submission Type: Bankline export file

Payment Date: 18 Aug 2010      Payment Method: RBS Bankline

Reference: 000001      Service User Number: N/A      [Reports](#)

**Payment File**

**File OK**      [Details](#)

**Transactions**

**There were transaction warnings**      [Details](#)

Accepted			Warnings		
	Count	Values (GBP)		Count	Values (GBP)
Credits	27	2,525.10	Credits	27	2,525.10
Debits	0	0.00	Debits	0	0.00
DDIs	0	n/a	DDIs	0	n/a
<b>Total</b>	<b>27</b>		<b>Total</b>	<b>27</b>	

These transactions will be included.

[Help](#)      [Confirm](#)      [Cancel](#)

**Figure 83: Confirm RBS Bankline**

1. Reports

A number of reports are available to view for the submission.

2. Payment File

Normally the **Payment File** will clearly display to show that there are no issues with the processing of the file. However, the first time a profile is used, this may be useful in spotting errors in the **Payment File**. In this case there will not be any **Submission Details** at the top of the form, instead will appear with the text **There were file errors**.

All being well, with no errors, you can now proceed to the next step. Click **Confirm**. By doing so you confirm that the payment process is acceptable and you are ready to progress.

You may find that progress is restricted, depending on system settings, in which case a suitable message will appear on the form.

## 6.2.4 Authorise

The authorisation section of the wizard can be in one, two or three stages, depending on the workflow configuration (see paragraph 5.9.2).

Where there is more than one authorisation stage, the wizard displays the current stage as, for example, 1 of 3, 2 of 2 as shown in the following illustration.

**Payroll - Authorise (1 of 3)**

**Authorise (1 of 3)**

Validation → Authorisation → Send

**Submission Details**

Submission Type: Structural Test

Payment Date: 24 Dec 2010      Payment Method: Bacs

Reference: 000006      Service User Number: 123456      Reports

**Payment File**

File OK      Details

**Transactions**

Transactions OK      Details

**Accepted**

	Count	Values (GBP)
Credits	24	44,949.49
Debits	0	0.00
DDIs	0	n/a
<b>Total</b>	<b>24</b>	

**History**

Confirmed	22/12/2010 16:25:34	User1
Validated	22/12/2010 16:23:33	User1

**Certificate Details**

Issuer: CorporateTestCertificate      Expiry Date: 01 Jan 2099      View

Subject Name: CorporateTestCertificate      Change

☒ Sign this payment

Help      Authorise      Close

Bacs | 22:30 | 4 MULTI | C:\path\_and\_name\_of\_file\_in\_process

**Figure 84: Authorise 1 of 3**

In the bottom right of the form you will see a checkbox labelled **Sign this payment**. By default it is checked. When this box is checked, signing will be required when the **Authorise** button is clicked. If you are unable or do not wish to sign at this stage, click in the box to remove the checkmark.

! If only a single authorisation stage is configured, this box cannot be unchecked and the payment must be signed. If you are unable to do so, you cannot proceed.

Authorisation with signing must be conducted in at least one of the authorisation stages. No matter how many stages have been configured, if the final authorisation stage is reached without being previously signed, it must be signed before authorisation can be completed. In this case, the **Sign this payment** checkbox will be checked and disabled so that it will not be possible to continue without signing. Once the payment has been signed, the checkbox will no longer appear on later authorisation stages.

Payroll - Authorise (3 of 3)

**Authorise (3 of 3)**

Validation → Authorisation → Send

**Submission Details**

Submission Type: Structural Test  
 Payment Date: 24 Dec 2010  
 Reference: 000006  
 Payment Method: Bacs  
 Service User Number: 123456  
 Reports

**Payment File**

File OK Details

**Transactions**

Transactions OK Details

**Accepted**

	Count	Values (GBP)
Credits	24	44,949.49
Debits	0	0.00
DDIs	0	n/a
<b>Total</b>	<b>24</b>	

**History**

✓ Authorised	22/12/2010 16:49:50	User1
✓ Authorised	22/12/2010 16:49:44	User1
✓ Confirmed	22/12/2010 16:25:34	User1
✓ Validated	22/12/2010 16:23:33	User1

**Certificate Details**

Issuer: CorporateTestCertificate  
 Subject Name: CorporateTestCertificate  
 Expiry Date: 01 Jan 2099  
 View  
 Change

☒ Sign this payment

Help Authorise Close

Bacs 22:30 4 MULTI C:\path\_and\_name\_of\_file\_in\_process

Figure 85: Authorisation signing mandatory

## Certificate details

At the bottom of the form you will see **Certificate Details**. From here you can view or, if necessary, change the certificate before the payment is sent.



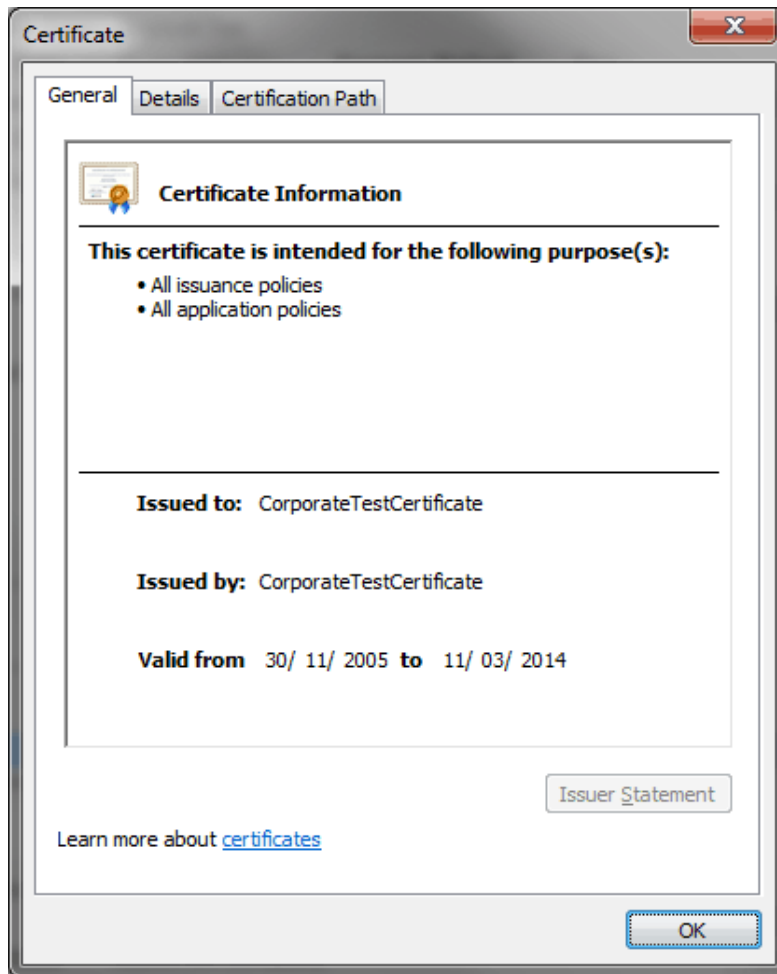


Figure 86: View certificate

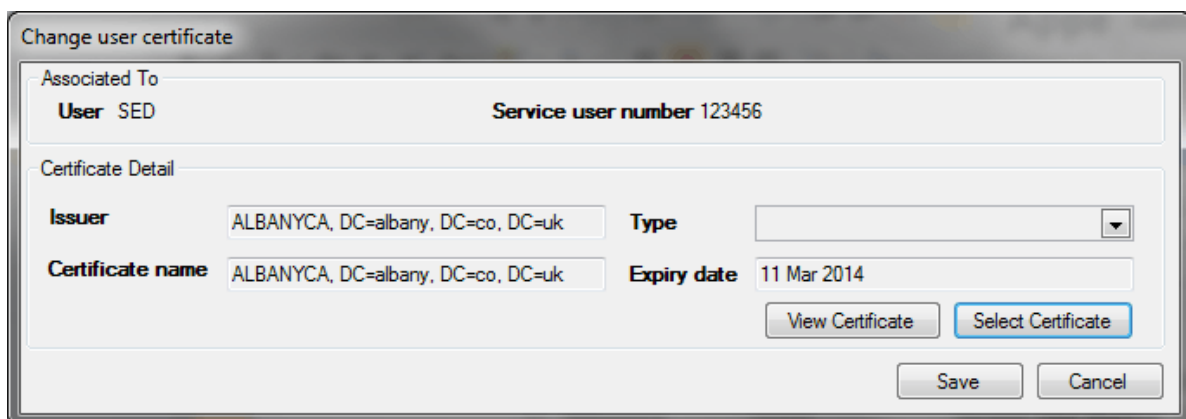


Figure 87: Change user certificate

## History

An additional area is at the bottom of the form displaying a grid of the History. At this stage there is only one row referring to the validation stage of the wizard. The history will update with each stage so that there is a record of which user conducted each stage, if it was successful and a full date/time stamp.

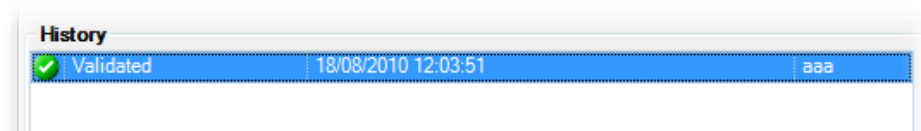


Figure 88: Payment process history

## Signing requirement

Signing requires payment authorisation with a Smart Card system or a Hardware Security Module (HSM)<sup>1</sup>. If you are using a HSM, then the process is automated and you will not be required to enter a PIN code. However, if you are using authorisation with a Smart Card system, then you will need to have a suitable Smart Card reader attached to your workstation and a valid Smart Card and corresponding PIN code ready.

If a Smart Card has not been inserted, you will be prompted to insert one.

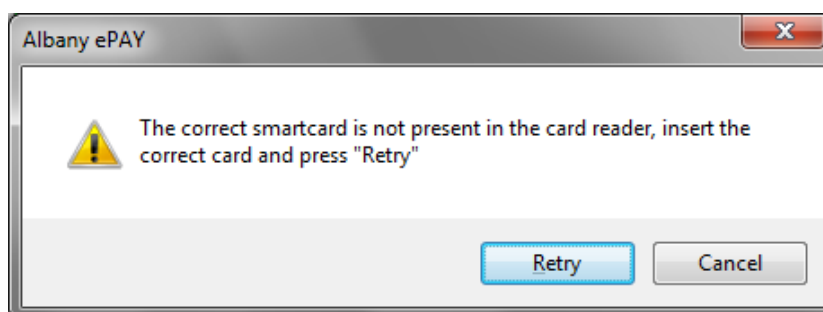


Figure 89: Smartcard Required

Insert the card into the reader and click the **Retry** button. The prompt for the PIN code will load:

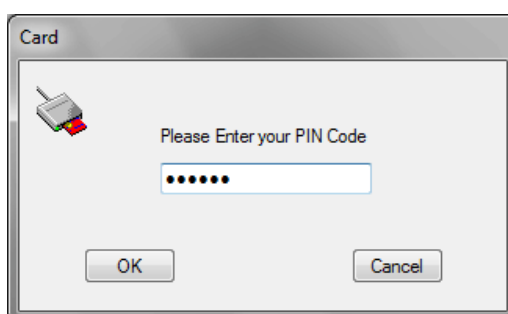


Figure 90: PIN code request

Enter the Smart Card PIN code in the box provided and click **OK**.

If you enter the wrong PIN code, a message will inform you. Click **OK** on the message, check the PIN code and re-enter it.

If the card is valid and the PIN correct, the payment will be signed and the form will return with the history updated.

---

<sup>1</sup> HSM is normally licensed separately.

- 
- ! If you are using RBS Bankline payment method, you will move directly to the Export stage, in which case you will merely need to click the **Export** button and the wizard will be complete without signing. In this case the history will record as “Authorised and Exported” or “Confirmed and Exported” as applicable. The file will have an information message recorded against it that specifies a successful export of data, detailing the path and filename written, this will be displayed in the final step of the wizard.
- 

Once all required authorisation stages are complete including signing at one of the stages, the payment is ready to send. The next step of the wizard will reflect this.

The payment is now ready to send. If progress is restricted, depending on system settings, a suitable message will appear on the form.

You must click **Finish** in this case. Another user will complete the wizard in order to send the payment.

If there are no restrictions, you may continue with the next step.

### 6.2.5 Send

Whether you are proceeding directly from the final authorisation step or only have permission for the sending step and are now joining the process, the result is the same. If you are joining the process, you will have done so from the *Pending* screen.

As during the Validation step, you can access the submission reports for more detailed information by clicking the **Reports** button. You can also view and even change the certificate if necessary before the payment is sent.

When you are satisfied that all the details are correct, click the **Send** button to proceed with the payment. If using a Smart Card, you will be required to supply the card with the PIN using an attached Smart Card reader, or HSM if you are using this equipment.

Once the Smart Card authorisation is complete, a form is displayed briefly whilst the payment is being sent.

Finally, the form will change so that the payment transaction is seen to be complete with the latest history added at the bottom of the form.

Monthly Payroll

**Submission sent**

Validation → Authorisation → Send

**Submission Status**

✓ **Submission sent successfully** [Details](#)

**Submission Summary** [Reports](#)

**Submission Type** Structural Test

**Payment Date** 26 Jan 2011 **Payment Method** Bacs

**Reference** 000004 **Service User Number** 123456

**Accepted**

	Count	Values (GBP)
<b>Credits</b>	24	44,949.49
<b>Debits</b>	0	0.00
<b>DDIs</b>	0	n/a
<b>Total</b>	24	

**History**

✓ Completed	24/01/2011 13:55:30	User3
✓ Sent	24/01/2011 13:55:30	User3
✓ Authorised	24/01/2011 13:53:46	User2
✓ Signed	24/01/2011 13:53:46	User2

[Help](#) [Finish](#)

Bacs 22:30 4 MULTI C:\ePAY Data\InProgress\2011\_1\_24\_13\_53\_6\_Monthly Payroll\_PAYROLL\_M.

**Figure 91: Payment successfully sent to BACS**

This is the final stage of the payment and concludes the wizard. Click the **Finish** button to close the form.

## 6.3 Submission reports








Navigate here from the **Reports** menu, **Submission Reports**. The following is an example of the **Submission Reports** screen.

Reports		Submission Reports								
Processing Reports		Excel								
Submission Reports (18)										
Returns and Advices (4)										
Administration										
Report Download Profiles										
Report Delivery										
Report Download Activity										
Reference	Profile Name	Credits	Debits	Earliest Payment Date	Later Payment Dates	Payment Type	Service ID	Creation Date	Submission Type	
000009	Payroll	£43,442	£0.00	09/12/2011	09/12/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural T...	
000008	Payroll	£40,763	£0.00	18/11/2011	18/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural T...	
000007	Payroll	£41,339	£0.00	18/11/2011	18/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural T...	
000006	Payroll	£44,949	£0.00	30/11/2011	30/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural T...	
000005	Payroll	£44,949	£0.00	22/11/2011	22/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural Te...	
000004	Payroll	£44,949	£0.00	18/11/2011	18/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural T...	
000003	Payroll	£44,949	£0.00	18/11/2011	18/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural Te...	
000001	Payroll	£44,949	£0.00	18/11/2011	18/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural Te...	

Figure 92: Compact submission reports list

Click  to the left of a submission row to view the available reports for that submission.

Submission Reports




      

Reference	Profile Name	Credits	Debits	Earliest Payment Date	Later Payment Dates	Payment Type	Service ID	Creation Date	Submission Type
000009	Payroll	£43,442	£0.00	09/12/2011	09/12/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural T...
000008	Payroll	£40,763	£0.00	18/11/2011	18/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural T...
000007	Payroll	£41,339	£0.00	18/11/2011	18/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural T...
000006	Payroll	£44,949	£0.00	30/11/2011	30/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural T...

Report Type	Name	Report Created Date	Status
ePAY - Summary	Payroll Summary Report	16/11/2011 14:17:58	
ePAY - Detailed	Payroll Detailed Report	16/11/2011 14:17:58	
ePAY - Warnings	Payroll Warning Report	16/11/2011 14:17:58	

Reference	Profile Name	Credits	Debits	Earliest Payment Date	Later Payment Dates	Payment Type	Service ID	Creation Date	Submission Type
000005	Payroll	£44,949	£0.00	22/11/2011	22/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural Te...
000004	Payroll	£44,949	£0.00	18/11/2011	18/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural T...
000003	Payroll	£44,949	£0.00	18/11/2011	18/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural Te...
000001	Payroll	£44,949	£0.00	18/11/2011	18/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural Te...


Figure 93: Expanded submission reports list

Double click to open a report or select it and click . Selected reports can also be printed , emailed  or exported .

If you cannot find a specific report, search tools are provided to assist you.

### 6.3.1 From the payment wizard

Once you have started the Payment Wizard you can view reports directly on the current submission by clicking the **Reports** button on the right of the *Submission Details* area of the wizard.

A number of reports are normally available to view for a submission, provided you have permission to view them, in which case, you can view the reports immediately by double clicking the report name or selecting the report and clicking . Examples follow:

Reports Viewer

Albany ePAY small business edition

Validation Report - Summary

**Monthly Payroll**

**Albany ePAY**

Submission ref **000004**      Currency **Sterling**      SUN **000001 - Bacs**

**Transactions summary**

	Total transactions	Total amount	Rejected transactions	Rejected amount	Accepted transactions	Accepted amount	Bacs limits exceeded?
<b>Credits</b>	24	44,949.49	0	0.00	24	44,949.49	No

**Transaction summary (Contras)**

Sort code	Account number	Account name	Accepted transactions	Accepted amount	Tm code	Processing date	Payment date	Statement reference
00-00-00	00007895	ALBANY SOFTWARE	24	44,949.49	17	21 Apr 2010	22 Apr 2010	000004/01 MONTHLY

Figure 94: Summary report example

Reports Viewer

Print... 100% 1 \1 Backward Forward Excel

Albany ePAY small business edition Validation Report - Detailed

Monthly Payroll Albany ePAY

Submission ref 000004 Currency Sterling SUN 000001 - Bacs



Sort code	Account number	Account name	Accepted amount	Tm code	Transaction reference	Processing date
00-00-00	10000000	MR K SMITHERS	1,590.00	99	MONTHLY PAYROLL	21 Apr 2010
09-00-00	20000002	CLARE HALL	1,120.12	99	MONTHLY PAYROLL	21 Apr 2010
05-00-00	20000000	MR M L JONES	2,876.16	99	MONTHLY PAYROLL	21 Apr 2010
08-00-00	60000002	MISS F J SMITH	2,200.88	99	MONTHLY PAYROLL	21 Apr 2010
08-00-00	10000004	MRS K L LOVELL	1,750.10	99	MONTHLY PAYROLL	21 Apr 2010
08-00-00	10000004	MR A CLARKE	3,100.01	99	A/234/4757/22233/X	21 Apr 2010
05-00-00	00000008	PETER HUDSON	1,987.80	99	MONTHLY PAYROLL	21 Apr 2010
09-00-00	80000001	LUCY MORRIS	980.10	99	MONTHLY PAYROLL	21 Apr 2010
08-00-00	80000008	SUZIE OSBORNE	2,322.67	99	MONTHLY PAYROLL	21 Apr 2010
77-00-00	90000008	EMMA HAGUE	3,123.22	99	MONTHLY PAYROLL	21 Apr 2010
00-00-00	10000002	MRS P DAVIS	989.10	99	MONTHLY PAYROLL	21 Apr 2010
00-00-00	20000002	MR TOM SULLIVAN	1,967.80	99	MONTHLY PAYROLL	21 Apr 2010

Figure 95: Detailed report example

! Tools are provided so that you can print, search change the zoom, change the number of pages you see at a time, switch pages, change format, export and email.

To close these reports, click **X** in the top right corner.

## 6.4 Payment file

Normally the **Payment File** will clearly display  to show that there are no issues with the processing of the file. However, the first time a profile is used, this may be useful in spotting errors in the **Payment File**. In this case there will not be any **Submission Details** at the top of the form, instead  will appear with the text **There were file errors**. To track down the errors in the file, click the **Details** button to the right. This will list all and any errors in the processing file. It is very unlikely that you will ever see this message as normally, the **Payment File** will have been set up correctly and will be reused many times without problem.

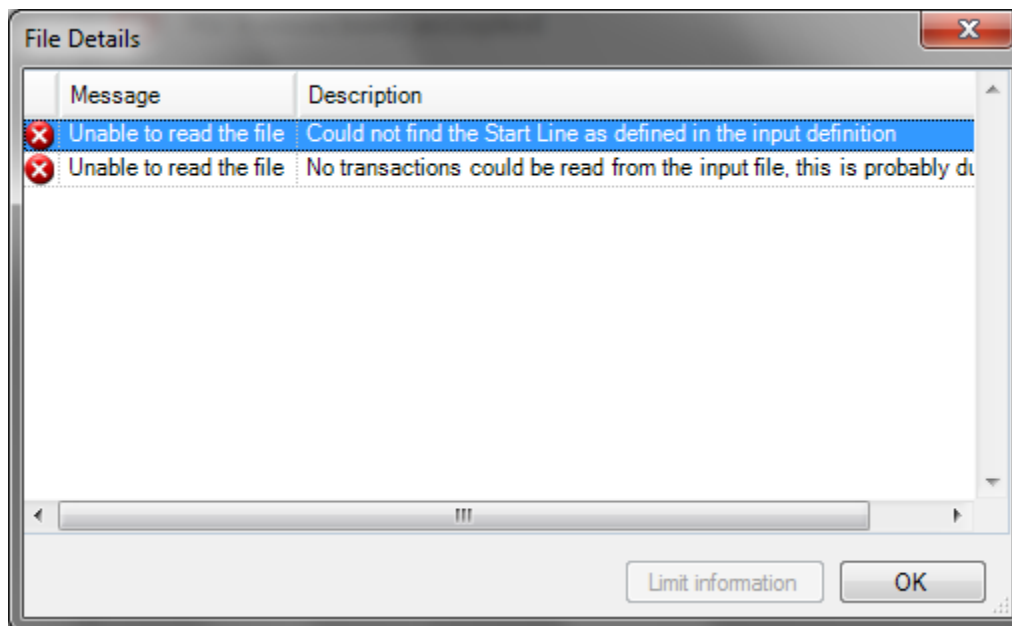


Figure 96: Payment file errors

If there are any problems with the **Payment File**, contact the system administrator. You will not be able to process the file and must close the wizard by clicking the **Finish** button in the bottom right of the form.

#### 6.4.1 Transaction details

The other area that you may need to check is the **Transactions Details**. Although the **Payment File** may be fine, you may encounter, from time to time, errors in transaction input, for example sort codes of banks that are not in the verification database will bring up errors. They may still be correct, but are marked as errors. Click the **Details** button to the right to open the *Transaction Details* window. This is divided into four tabs, **Accepted**, **Warnings**, **Errors** and **Source**. In each of these is the appropriate information. If there are no errors, then the errors tab will be blank.

#### 6.4.2 Output file

You may be asked to check that the output file is correct. In this case, switch to the appropriate tab and click the **Output** button. You can then view the CSV output file that was generated for the transactions.

Click **OK** to close the *Output* window.

### 6.5 Certificate details

At the bottom of the form you will now see **Certificate Details**. To view the certificate, click the **View** button. Click **OK** to close the *Certificate* form.



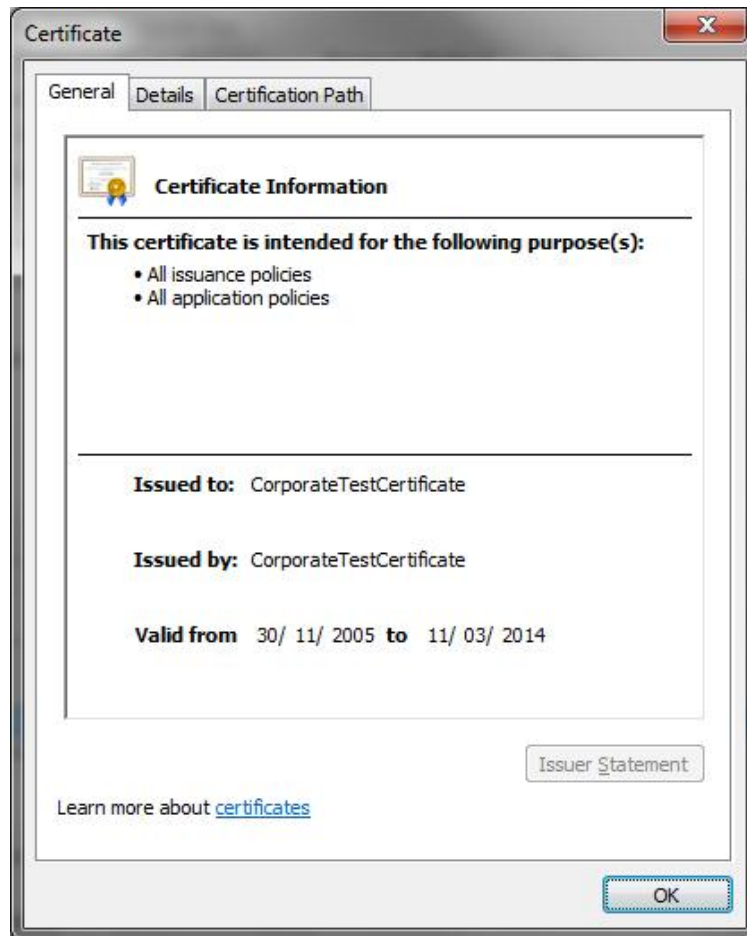


Figure 97: User certificate

If the certificate has expired, click the **Change** button below the **View** button.

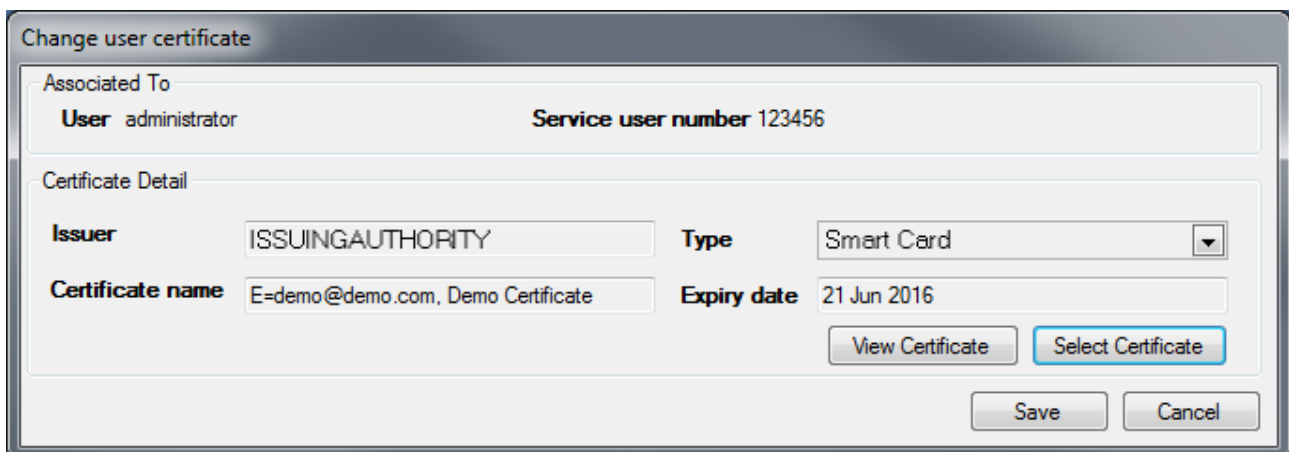
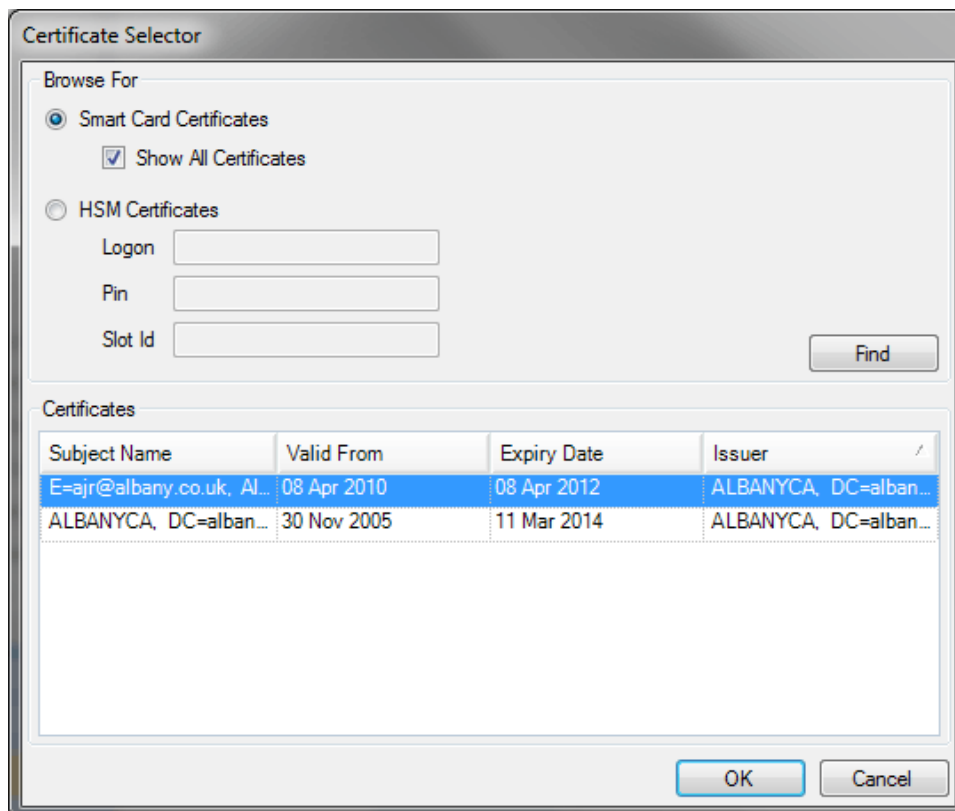


Figure 98: Change user certificate example

In the *Change user certificate* dialog, the existing certificate details are displayed. Click **Select Certificate** and choose a current valid certificate from those available, as shown in the illustration below. Click **OK** to close the *Certificate Selector* and **Save** to close the *Change user certificate* dialog.



**Figure 99: Certificate selector dialog**

The new certificate details will now appear on the wizard form.


## 6.6 Pending payments

When payment processing needs to be completed by more than one person, for example when each stage of the process has permissions set for a different person, after the initial validation has taken place using the wizard, access for another person to the partly completed process is through the *Pending* screen.

Click **Payments** and click **Pending** on the left or click the *Pending* link on the right. A *Pending* screen grid will load.

By default, the view displays all pending payments, that is payments that are in process and require further action. If you wish to see only those payments which require action from you, change **Display: All Items** to **Display: My Items**. To do this, click the arrow to the right of **Display: All Items** on the toolbar and select **Display: My Items**. Now, only those items assigned for action by you will be listed.

### 6.6.1 Resume the wizard

To resume the wizard and continue with the next step of the process, either double click the appropriate row in the grid in the upper pane, or select it and click . This will jump directly to the correct stage in the Payments Processing Wizard. If you do not have permission to continue with the next step for the selected payment, this button will be disabled.

To progress more than one payment, select the first payment file row to be progressed and while holding down the **Ctrl** key, click another payment file row. Repeat until all payments to be progressed are selected.

- 
- ! When multi selecting for the purpose of progression of payments, all selected payment files must be at the same stage of processing.
- 

To select a number of rows that are contiguous, select the first row, hold down the **Shift key** and select the last row.

## 6.6.2 Pending screen tools

As well as resuming the wizard from here, there are also other tools provided to assist you in dealing with pending payments.

- 
- ! A grid at the top of the screen shows details of all payments still in process. Each row indicates a separate payment process. The columns in the grid provide useful information on these payments. The *Pending* screen grid can be customised to suit your requirements. Refer to chapter 9 for more information.
- 

In the lower pane of this screen are three tabs which can provide additional, more detailed information concerning the selected row in the upper pane.

### 1. File Details

A variety of information is supplied in the **File Details** tab, examples of which are shown in the following illustration.

- 
- ! In the **Errors** and **Warnings** sub tabs, there is a clear indication of errors that will be rejected and warnings for transactions that will be processed.
- 

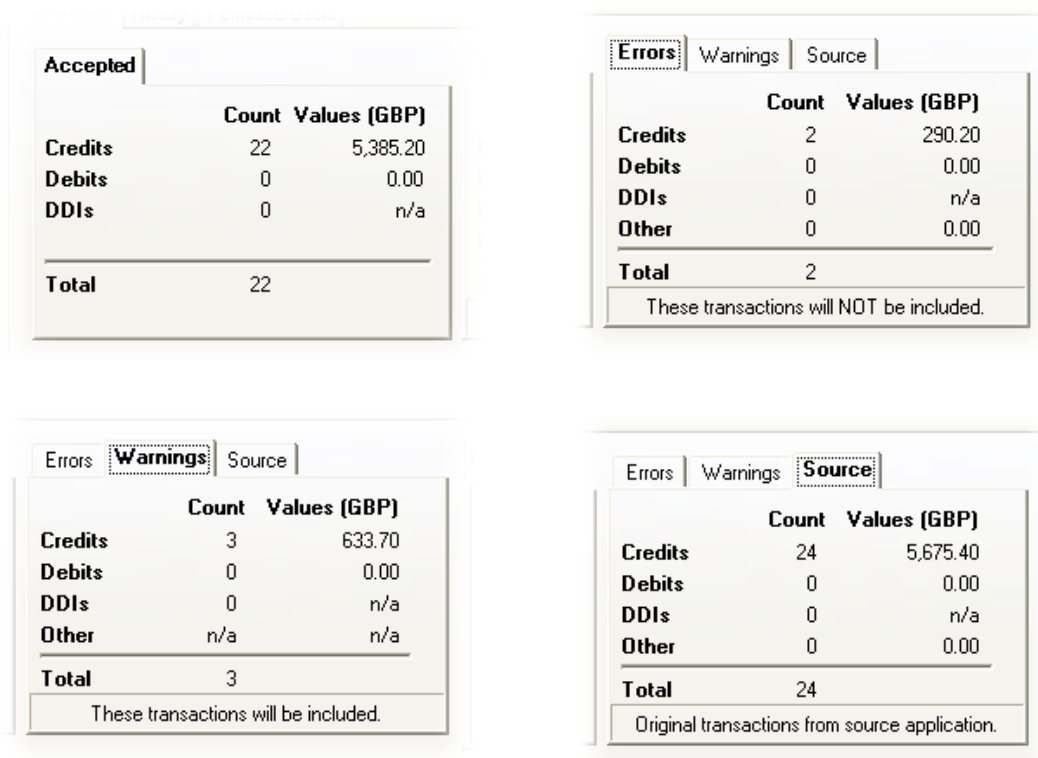
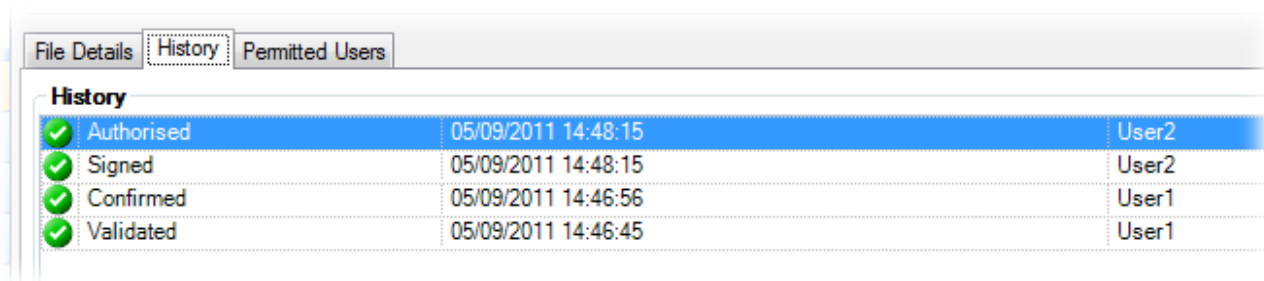


Figure 100: File details examples

### 2. History

The **History** tab provides a more detailed history of the payment process so far for the selected submission. This includes the stages through which the payment file has passed, who performed the actions and when they were completed.

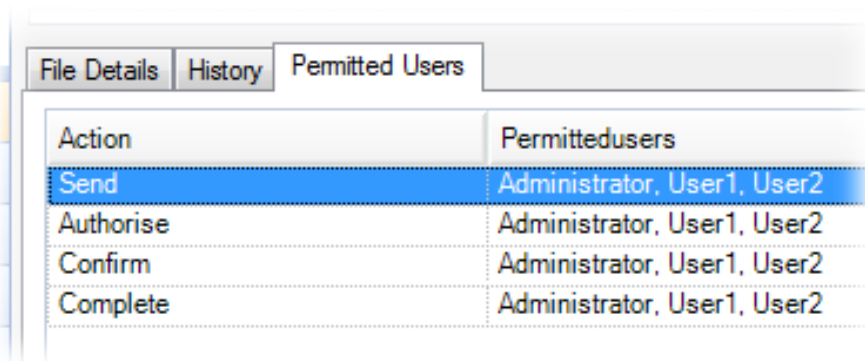


History			
✓	Authorised	05/09/2011 14:48:15	User2
✓	Signed	05/09/2011 14:48:15	User2
✓	Confirmed	05/09/2011 14:46:56	User1
✓	Validated	05/09/2011 14:46:45	User1

**Figure 101: History example**

### 3. Permitted users

The **Permitted Users** tab shows which users may perform which actions on the payment file.



Action	Permitted users
Send	Administrator, User1, User2
Authorise	Administrator, User1, User2
Confirm	Administrator, User1, User2
Complete	Administrator, User1, User2

**Figure 102: Permitted users example**

In addition to these tabs, there are other tools accessed from the toolbar.

## 6.6.3 Payment details

Select a payment row in the grid and click  to open the *Payment Details* form.

**PaymentDetails**

**Submission Details**

Submission Type: Structural Test  
 Payment Date: 21 Sep 2011  
 Reference: 00000T  
 Payment Method: Bacs  
 Service User Number: 123456

**Accepted:**

	Count	Values (GBP)
Credits	24	44,949.49
Debits	0	0.00
DDIs	0	n/a
<b>Total</b>	<b>24</b>	

**Warnings:**

	Count	Values (GBP)
Credits	24	44,949.49
Debits	0	0.00
DDIs	0	n/a
Other	n/a	n/a
<b>Total</b>	<b>24</b>	

These transactions will be included.

View file details  
 View transactions  
 Change Assignee

Reports | Output

Excel

Report Type	Name	Created Date
ePAY - Summary	Payroll Summary Report	05/09/2011
ePAY - Detailed	Payroll Detailed Report	05/09/2011
ePAY - Warnings	Payroll Warning Report	05/09/2011

Close

Figure 103: Payment Details form

This supplies additional information for a payment, firstly from the *Submission Details* area where you can click the **View file details** button to open the *File Details* form, **View transactions** to open the *Transaction Details* form and **Change Assignee**. These functions are described below:

- **View file details** button – *File Details* form

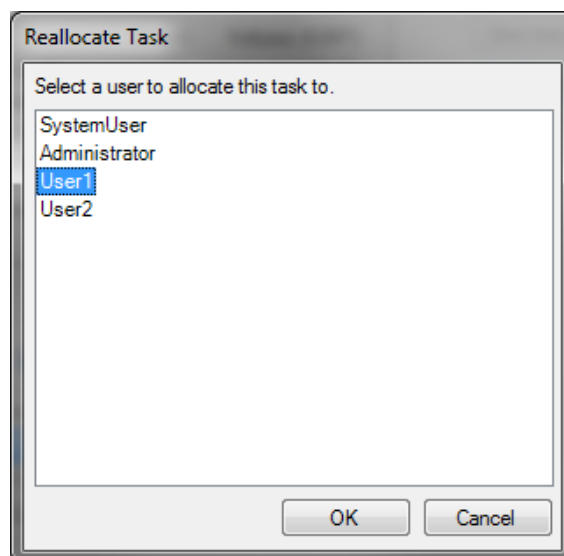
In this dialog information on limits can be viewed by clicking **Limit information**. The *Limit Information* dialog displays the account limits applying to the payment file and the current limit usage with values for remaining credit and debit limits.

- **View transactions** button – *Transaction Details* form

This form is described in paragraph 6.4.1.

- **Change Assignee** button – *Reallocate Task*

This feature is designed so that, where necessary, a task can be reassigned to another user who has been assigned appropriate permissions. Clicking the **Change Assignee** button will open the following dialog. Select the name of the alternative user and click **OK** to complete the assignment.



**Figure 104: Change Assignee**

You can also view reports on the **Reports** tab. These are the reports that were created in the first stage of the processing wizard. See paragraph 6.3, Submission reports, for more information.

You can view reports on the **Reports** tab. These are the reports that were created in the first stage of the processing wizard. To view a report, double click its row or select it and click . The report will open in a separate window from which it can be viewed, printed, emailed or exported. You can also print, email or export the report directly from the *Payment Details* form without first opening it. To email the report(s), select them first (use the **Ctrl** key with the mouse to select more than one), then click . Select the format you wish the report to be emailed in.

Next you need to select the email recipients. Click to the right of the **Recipients** box to open the *Select email recipients* dialog. At the top on the left a filter is provided called **Show names from** to allow you to select Users, Groups, or Contacts. Select any of these to see the items available in each list.

Select the names you wish to include and click **>** to add them to the right hand box. You can repeat this procedure for one or more of the lists provided. Users are prefixed with **U**, Groups with **G** and Contacts with **C**. When ready, click **OK**. The names are added to the **Recipients** box.

Type a **Subject** for the email. As soon as you do this, the **OK** button is enabled. You can add text for the body of the **Message**, but this is optional. Click **OK** when ready to close the dialog.

In addition to the **Reports** tab is the **Output** tab. See paragraph 6.4.2 for more information.

Click **OK** to close the form.

#### 6.6.4 Delete payment

If you decide that a payment that is already partially processed is not correct for submission, you can delete it so that changes or corrections can be applied if necessary and the process restarted, or just removed completely. To do this, click . You will be asked to confirm deletion.

Once a payment has been deleted, it is removed from the *Pending* screen and added to the Complete screen with the **Status** of *Voided*.

#### 6.6.5 Refresh the screen

If the screen has not automatically refreshed you can do so manually by clicking .

If a payment has been sent, it is moved from the *Pending* screen to the *Sent* screen.

## 6.7 Sent payments

Select **Payments, Sent** to access the *Sent* screen.

- ! A grid at the top of the screen shows details of all payments still in process. Each row indicates a separate payment process. The columns in the grid provide useful information on these payments. The Pending screen grid can be customised to suit your requirements. Refer to chapter 9 for more information.

The *Sent* screen displays all payment files which have been sent on to your Clearing Settlement Mechanism (CSM), but payment has not yet been completed.

- ! The behaviour of payments through the screens depends on the Submission Type, Structural Test, Full Test or Live. Live payments differ significantly in that they indicate the next step, once sent, as ready for report collection.

The **File Details** tab in the lower area provides information regarding the transactions within the file, listing the total accepted, any errors or warnings pertaining to the transactions, and totals from the input file for comparison. Also any file warnings are displayed. An example is shown in the following illustration:


File Details			History		
Accepted			Errors	Warnings	Source
	Count	Values (GBP)			
Credits	3	736.30	Credits	1	0.00
Debits	0	0.00	Debits	0	0.00
DDIs	0	n/a	DDIs	0	n/a
			Other	0	0.00
<b>Total</b>	<b>3</b>		<b>Total</b>	<b>1</b>	
			These transactions will NOT be included.		
			File Warnings & Errors		

Figure 105: Sent payments file details


The **History** tab shows the stages through which the payment file has passed, who had performed the actions and when they completed:

File Details			History		
			History		
✓	Sent	18/08/2010 14:42:07	Administrator		
✓	Authorised and signed	18/08/2010 14:41:59	Administrator		
✓	Validated	18/08/2010 14:41:48	Administrator		

Figure 106: Sent payments history

Buttons are provided on the toolbar to refresh the screen, access help and open details for a selected row. In addition to the **File Details** and **History** in the lower pane you can also select a row and click  to open the *Transaction Processing Details* dialog. From this you can access reports from the processing.

### 6.7.1 Transaction processing details

Select a payment row in the grid and click  to open the *Payment Details* form. See paragraph 6.6.3 for more information.

You can also view Summary and Detailed Reports on the **Reports** tab. These are the reports that were created in the first stage of the processing wizard. See Submission Reports for more information.

In addition to the **Reports** tab is the **Output** tab. See paragraph 6.4.2.

Click **OK** to close the form.

## 6.8 Complete payments



Select **Payments, Complete** to access the *Complete* payments screen. The *Complete* screen displays all payment files which have been sent on to your Clearing Settlement Mechanism (CSM), that are now complete. Normally completed payments are held visible here for 31 days when they will be automatically removed.

For each payment file, the display provides information regarding:

- **Reference** - a sequential submission reference number.
- **Profile** - the Payment Profile.
- **Submission Type** - either LIVE, FULL TEST or STRUCTURAL TEST.
- **Payment Method** - either Bacs or Faster Payments.
- **SUN** - the Service User Number used by the submission.
- **Payment Date** - the date on which the transactions in the file will be completed by Bacs.
- **Sent Date** - the date on which the payment was made.
- **Processed Date** - the date on which the payment was processed.
- **Status** – Complete or Voided.

The **File Details** tab in the lower pane provides information regarding the transactions within the file, listing the total accepted, any errors or warnings pertaining to the transactions, and totals from the input file for comparison. Also any file warnings are displayed.

The **History** tab shows the stages through which the payment file has passed, who had performed the actions and when they completed.

Two buttons are provided on the toolbar,  and .

### 6.8.1 Payment details

Select a payment row in the grid and click  to open the *Payment Details* form.

See paragraph 6.6.3 for more information.



## 7 Payments Manager

The Payments Manager allows storage of related payment information in payment libraries.

A payment library is a container for payments and looks much like a folder in the way it behaves. Each payment library is a simple database within the payment manager that stores generic payment and beneficial contact information that can be processed through Albany ePAY. The situations in which a payment library is used will vary between organisations.

Examples of situations it would be useful for are:

- **Account package limitations**

If your account package cannot store account numbers, the payment library can be used to store them. When the data is merged between the account package and the library, the records are matched based on the account reference.

- **Ad hoc payments**

It may be easier to conduct a one off payment via the payment library than through payment software.

- **Expenses**

Where your payroll software does not handle expenses, these can be maintained and paid via the payment library.

- **Direct Debits**

A simple way to set up and collect direct debits.

A frequent application of the library could be for regular, identical payments, for example, a gym subscription. This could be in more than one part, with the regular monthly subscription as the main element, but perhaps with an additional element for the joining fee, or a special introductory rate.

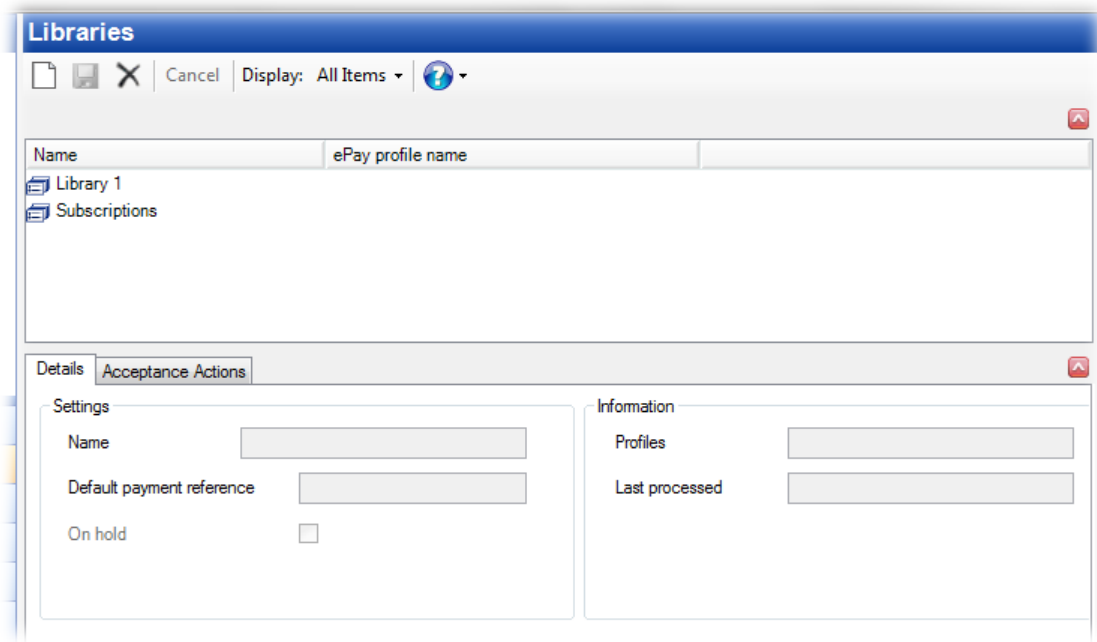
- **Small payroll**

If yours is a small organisation, it may be easier to run a payroll from manually entered employees in a library than from a file.

A payment library is attached to a payment profile so that it can be processed through the payment processing wizard like any other submission. See paragraph 7.1.2 for details on attaching the library to a payment profile.

Each library can contain multiple payment details, the library acting as a grouping for related payments.

To find the payment libraries, navigate to **Payments Manager, Libraries**. The following is an example of the *Libraries* screen:



**Figure 107: Libraries**

Existing libraries are listed in the *Libraries* screen, as shown above. Once attached to a payment profile, the name of that profile is displayed in the second column.

---

! If you cannot see the Payments Manager, it means that your licence does not include it.

---

To open a library, double click the name. The navigation area on the left will change to display a 'sub-folder' with the name **Contacts** followed by the library name you selected. The *Libraries* screen now shows all the contacts in that library, if there are any, as shown in Figure 97.

**Contacts - Payroll**

Display: All Items   Search in Company name for

Hold	Account reference	Company name	Amount	Payment reference	Transaction type	Date
<input type="checkbox"/>	02UK01	02	0.00	a/c00104160567	99 Direct Credit	
<input type="checkbox"/>	101C01		0.00	XML WEB ALBAN	99 Direct Credit	
<input type="checkbox"/>	1NET01	1Net	0.00	INV 100131/ALBA	99 Direct Credit	
<input type="checkbox"/>	4IMP01		0.00	BACS T	99 Direct Credit	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	A&F001		0.00	INV8303/ALBANY	99 Direct Credit	
<input type="checkbox"/>	A1SE01		0.00	ALBANY SOFTW	99 Direct Credit	
<input type="checkbox"/>	AABS01	AAB Supplies	0.00	ALBANY S/W 414	99 Direct Credit	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ABIN01		0.00	ALBANY SOFTW	99 Direct Credit	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ABML01		0.00	A07-ALBANY S/	99 Direct Credit	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ABS001		0.00	215/ALBANY	99 Direct Credit	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ACAD01		0.00	486/ALBANY SO	99 Direct Credit	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ACCE01		0.00	ALBANY SOFTW	99 Direct Credit	
<input type="checkbox"/>	ACCE02		0.00	155606/ALBANY	99 Direct Credit	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ACCO01		0.00	ALBANY S/W LT	99 Direct Credit	
<input type="checkbox"/>	ACOR01		0.00	ALB001	99 Direct Credit	

Payment   Contact   Address

**Details**

Amount: 0.00

Payment reference: a/c00104160567 ALB

Transaction type: 99 Direct Credit

Payment date: [none]

On hold: ☐

Comments:

**Company**

Account reference: 000000

Name: Name

**Destination account**

Account name: Account Name

Sort code: 000000

Account number: 00000000

Figure 108: Contact records

## 7.1 Create new payment library

Navigate to **Payments Manager, Libraries**. In the *Libraries* screen click .

! Any entries you add will affect all records that are later added to this library.

### 1. Details

In the lower pane, in the **Details** tab, you will see that a new library framework is created with the default name *new library 1*. Overtyping this with a suitable name for the library that will describe the sort of payments it will contain. In addition, you may like to complete the following:

- **Default payment reference**

The payment reference is normally an internal reference from your organisation used to describe a particular payment type, for example, if you use the library for the processing of a small payroll each month, you might have a reference for payroll. You might have another library for payment of suppliers for which you would have another payment reference. So, if all the payments in a library will have the same payment reference, you can add this here to save time later.

- **On hold**

Click in this check box if you want to place the entire library on hold, for example, to ensure that the library is not processed for payment whilst a task such as updating payment amounts is conducted for all records. Once the updating is complete and all the records are ready for processing, click to remove the check mark so that the library is released.

- **Profiles**

This is a list of payment profiles to which this library is attached, provided for information only.

- **Last processed**

This provides the date that a payment profile that uses this library was last sent.

## 2. **Acceptance actions**


Switch to the **Acceptance Actions** tab. This tab contains just two check boxes:

- **Clear amount**

This will automatically clear the amount of any record in the library at the end of a payment submission. This is useful, for example, in the case of payments that will vary with each submission, such as expenses. If you want to ensure that payments are not made accidentally, using this checkbox will ensure that values have to be added afresh before each payment run. This applies whether an input file is used or not.

- **Update DD transaction codes**

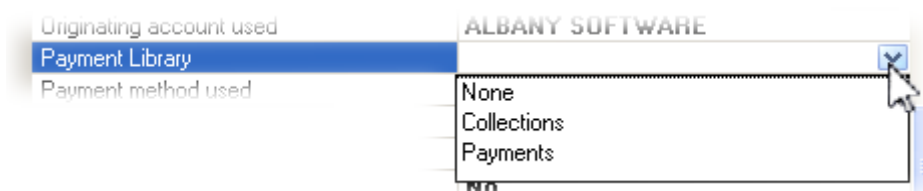
Transaction codes, also referred to as Transaction types, are used to define different payment types. Some of these are only expected to occur once before progressing to a later stage, for example *ON Direct Debit - new instruction*. This will occur at the onset of a new direct debit, but once that has occurred, the next stage will be *01 Direct Debit - first collection*. The direct debit changes automatically, again for a single cycle. After that the direct debit will change to *17 Direct Debit - regular collection*. By selecting this check box the codes that will only occur once before progressing will be automatically updated and you will not need to change them manually each month. Refer to Appendix B: Transaction Codes for more information about different codes.

Click  to save the changes. The new library now appears and is ready for you to create records.


To open the library in order to add records, double click the name of the payment library.

## 7.1.2 **Attach to a payment profile**

Once a payment library has been set up, in order to use it, you must first attach it to a Payment Profile. Navigate to **Administration, Payment Settings, Payment Profiles** and select the profile you wish to attach the payment to. In the lower pane, select the **Processing Rules** tab and scroll through the listed rules until you locate *Payment Library*.



**Figure 109: Attach payment library**

Click in the right hand box and then click the arrow to the right that will appear. All available payment libraries will be listed. Select the one you wish to use. Click  to save the changes to the Payment Profile.

- 
- ! If a processing file is supplied in the payment profile and a payment library is also specified, the data will be merged based on the **Account Reference**. In this case, if data is duplicated, the information held in the processing file will take precedence over and, if necessary, override the library data.
- 


## 7.2 Library records

Records in a payment library are generally referred to as contacts. Records can be added manually one at a time or in bulk from a file.

### 7.2.1 Add records manually

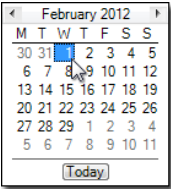
If you only have a small number of records to add, or even a single record, this is possibly the simplest way in which to add the record.

Ensure that the correct library is selected. If the wrong library is active, select **Libraries** in the navigation pane and double click the library name on the right. This will activate the library so that its name appears in the title bar for the newly created *Payroll* library. You will see that its name in the title bar includes the word *Contacts*. Each record in the library is referred to as a contact.


To add a single record, click .

A new record is created and the lower pane is enabled. All the information is optional, i.e. you can save the record without adding any data. This allows you the flexibility to complete only as much as you need. Once you begin to enter information, however, you may find that other information will be required. An example of this is the **Destination account** area. If you complete any part of this, you must complete it all.

In the lower pane you add information for the payment as follows:

Item	Description
<i>Details</i>	This area is for the payment details.
<b>Amount</b>	Complete this if the amount is known, particularly for a single payment. If the payment is to be regular, such as monthly, and always the same amount, this can also be entered with confidence.
<b>Payment reference</b>	This is normally an internal reference from your organisation used to describe a particular payment type, for example, if this record is for an employee payroll, you might have a reference for payroll. For the account holder, for example that of the employee who has been paid, this appears in his/her bank statement so that the source is clearly identifiable.
<b>Transaction type</b>	This is also referred to as a transaction code and is used to define different payment types (refer to Appendix B: Transaction Codes for more information). This is a specific code, used to describe credit or debit types. Click the arrow to the right and select a transaction type from the list.
<b>Payment date</b>	<p>If you know the specific date on which a single payment is to be made with this record, you can enter it here. Remember that Bacs will not accept submissions more than 31 days in advance for either Bacs 3 day or Faster Payments. To enter the date, click the arrow to the right of the box to open a calendar. Select the date or use the arrows at the top of the calendar to move to a different month, if necessary.</p> 
<b>On hold</b>	Click in this check box if, once the record is created, you don't want it to be available for processing straight away. This will allow further checks to be made before the record is released for processing, thus avoiding accidental processing where amounts have been entered.
<i>Company</i>	This area is for the entry of information specific to the contact. This could be a company or an individual.
<b>Account reference</b>	This is for an internally supplied reference for the contact, if required by your system.
<b>Name</b>	This is for the specific contact name, if required.
<i>Destination account</i>	This area is for the specific destination account details. This could refer to the destination account for a payment or to the account from which money will be drawn in the case of a direct debit. This will be validated against the bank account validation database. If there are errors, you will be notified, however, as not all bank details can be verified for some of the smaller banks, you can proceed even with errors, so do be careful to enter the details accurately.
<b>Account name</b>	The name of the account.
<b>Sort code</b>	The sort code of the account.
<b>Account number</b>	The number of the account.
<b>Comments</b>	You can use this box to add any comments that may be useful for your records. This is limited to a maximum of 255 characters.

## Contact and address tabs

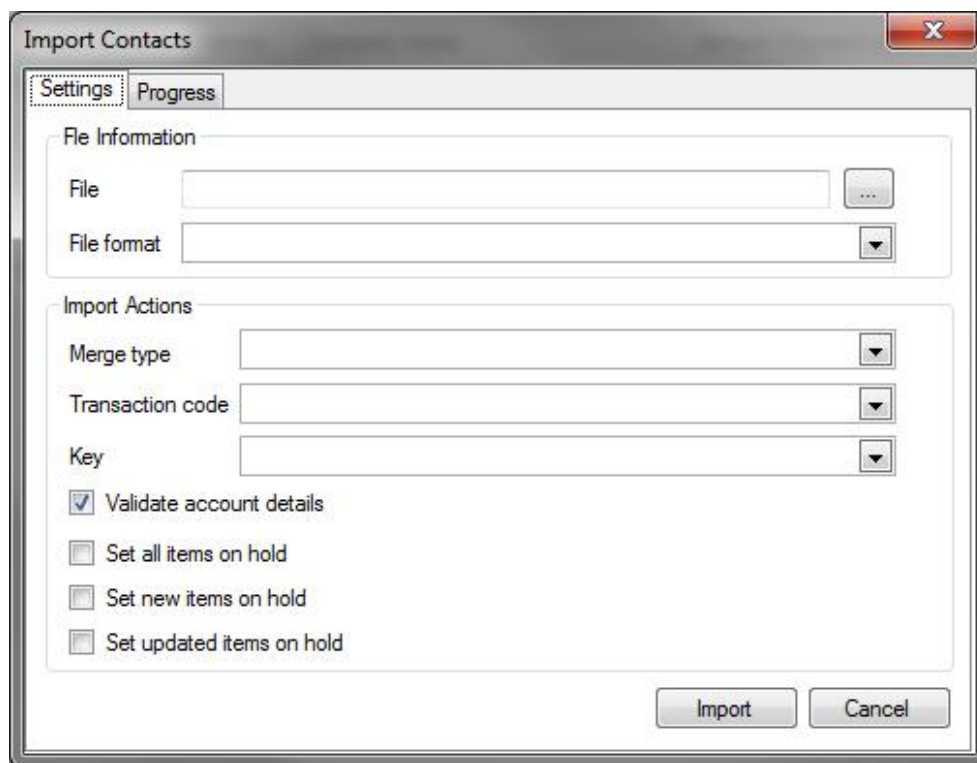
These tabs are supplied in order for you to enter more detailed contact information if you wish. Once you have completed as much as you wish click .

## 7.3 Import contacts


Before you import contacts into a payment library, you must first ensure that an appropriate file format has been imported. See paragraph 5.9.4 for more information.

Navigate to **Payments Manager, Libraries** and double click the library you wish to import contact records into on the right. This topic describes the method for importing contact records from a file. You must have a suitable file with the data as well as a correctly set up File Format that will define the columns in the data file so that the contact records can be imported successfully with data mapped to the correct locations.

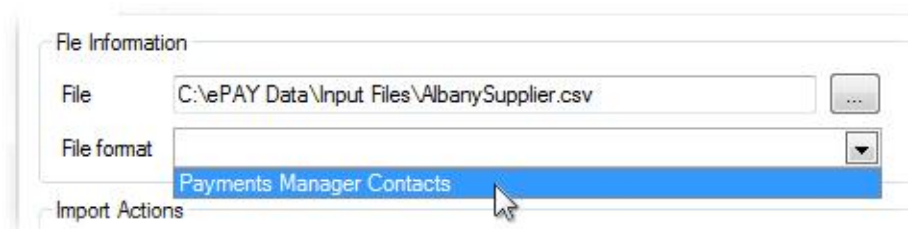
Click ; the *Import Contacts* dialog will load:



**Figure 110: Import contacts dialog**

In the *File Information* area, click  to the right of the **File** box. This will open a *Directory Browser* dialog in which you navigate to the location for the file you wish to import. Select the file name and click **OK**.

You will now need to select the File format definition to use with the imported contacts. Click the arrow to the right of the **File format** box and select the file format you wish to use with the selected file, as shown in the example below.

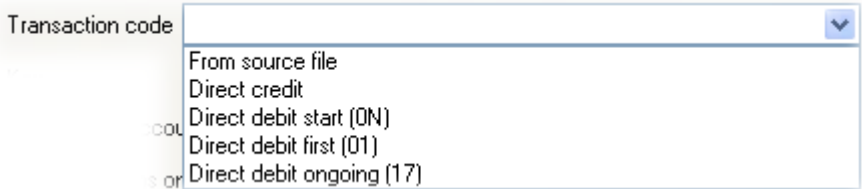
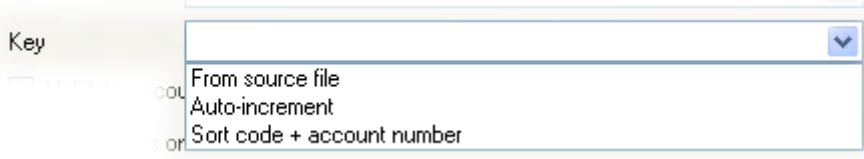


**Figure 111: File format import**

If the file format you need is not already present in Albany ePAY, you may need to import it. This is conducted in the same way as payment file formats described in paragraph 5.10.1.

! The **File** from which the information will be imported will normally contain columnar information such as a CSV<sup>2</sup> file. When you select the **File format**, this determines which columns will be supplied by the file and what type of data will be stored in each column.

The table on the next page describes the appropriate *Import Actions*:

Action	Description
<b>Merge type</b>	<p>This box allows you to choose from:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <i>Merge and update</i> — this will append all new records and will also update any existing records where the data is different</li> <li>▪ <i>Merge and add</i> — this will only append new records and will <u>not</u> update any existing records, care should be taken to check for creation of duplicate records</li> <li>▪ <i>Replace all</i> — this will remove all existing records and replace them with all the records in the import file</li> </ul>
<b>Transaction code</b>	<p>Select the transaction code you wish to apply. If the transaction code is already included in the file you are importing, you can select <i>From source file</i>.</p> 
<b>Key</b>	<p>The key is the unique identifier for each contact record that will facilitate the merging of data when a processing file is used in addition to a payment library. It becomes the account reference. This can be created in one of three ways, selected from this box:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <i>From source file</i> — this takes the account reference directly from the import source file.</li> <li>▪ <i>Auto-increment</i> — this will create a unique number for each contact record, incrementing the number with each new contact record as it is added.</li> <li>▪ <i>Sort code + account number</i> — this generates the key automatically from the known sort code and account number for each contact record by concatenating the two together as one long number so sort code 00-11-22 and account number 01234567 will become 00112201234567, providing a unique key for the contact.</li> </ul> 
<b>Validate account details</b>	<p>This check box is populated by default so that all bank account details will be validated against the validation database (for more information on the validation database, refer to paragraphs 4.7.1 and/or 6.2.1.</p>
<b>Set all items on hold</b>	<p>Select this check box if you want all items in the library to be put on hold so that payments cannot be processed, allowing further checks after the import is complete.</p>
<b>Set new items on hold</b>	<p>Select this check box if you want only new contact records added to the library as a result of the import to be put on hold. Updated items are <u>not</u> put on hold.</p>
<b>Set updated items on hold</b>	<p>Select this check box to put any contact records that have been updated on hold. New items are <u>not</u> put on hold.</p>

<sup>2</sup> Comma separated variable – This is a file with fields separated by a pre-defined character, referred to as a delimiter. In a CSV file, this is most commonly a comma.



When you are ready, click **Import**. The view will automatically switch to the **Progress** tab so that you can view the progress of the import. Depending on the number of records and your system, this time this takes will vary.

When the import is complete, the **Close** button is enabled. Click this to close the dialog. You will now see the records added to the library.

## 7.4 Library maintenance

Select **Payments Manager, Libraries** and double click the library you wish to edit. All the records for the selected library are listed in the upper pane.

### 7.4.1 Print

If you wish, you can print all or some of the contact records listed and include all or some of the information. If you wish to print some of the contact records, but not all, you must first select the contact records. An individual contact record is selected by clicking at the far left of the contact record row, as shown in the following illustration:

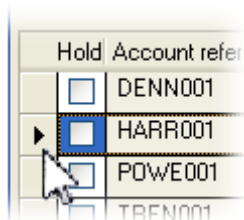


Figure 112: Select single contact

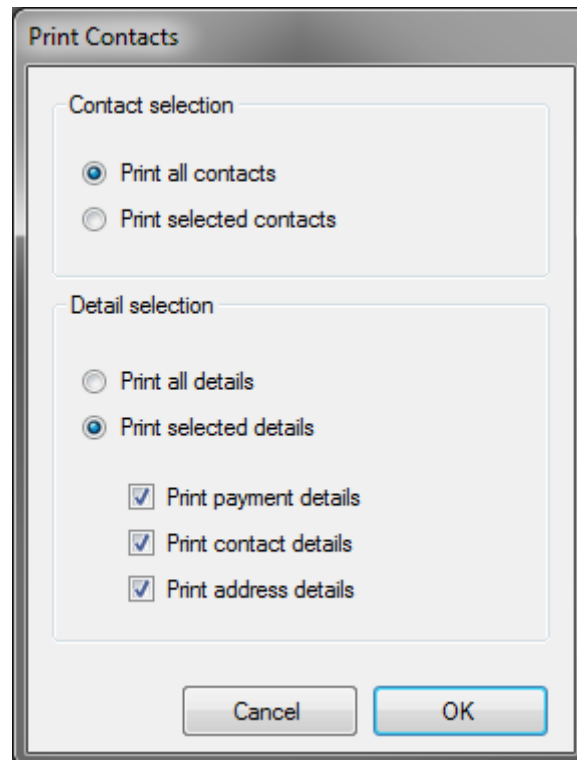
### 7.4.2 Selecting contacts

If the rows you want to select are contiguous, click and drag from the first to the last in this area. If they are separated by rows you don't want to print, hold down the **Ctrl** key as you click each one to select it. You can also deselect individual rows using the **Ctrl** key.

<input type="checkbox"/>	DENN001	Denby Cars	0.00	DENN001	00 Direct Debit -	
<input type="checkbox"/>	HARR001	Harris Paper Lt	0.00	HARR001	0N Direct Debit -	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	POWE001	Power Electric	250.41	POWE001	01 Direct Debit - f	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	TREN001	Trent Cleaners	157.67	TREN001	01 Direct Debit - f	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	RAYD001	Ray Denby Buil	4034.98	RAYD001	01 Direct Debit - f	
<input type="checkbox"/>	TANN001	Tanner Publishi	0.00	TANN001	0N Direct Debit -	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	MILL001	Miller Hospitalit	561.50	MILL001	17 Direct Debit - r	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	OXLE001	Oxley Sports Lt	112.19	OXLE001	17 Direct Debit - r	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	DART001	Dart Software	347.00	DART001	17 Direct Debit - r	
<input type="checkbox"/>	LEEC001	Lee Clarke & S	121.50	LEEC001	17 Direct Debit - r	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	DAVI001	Davis Carpets	0.00	DAVI001	0N Direct Debit -	
<input type="checkbox"/>	SULL001	Sullivans	232.25	SULL001	17 Direct Debit - r	
<input type="checkbox"/>	ONE2001	One 2 Call	263.88	ONE2001	17 Direct Debit - r	

Figure 113: Select multiple contacts

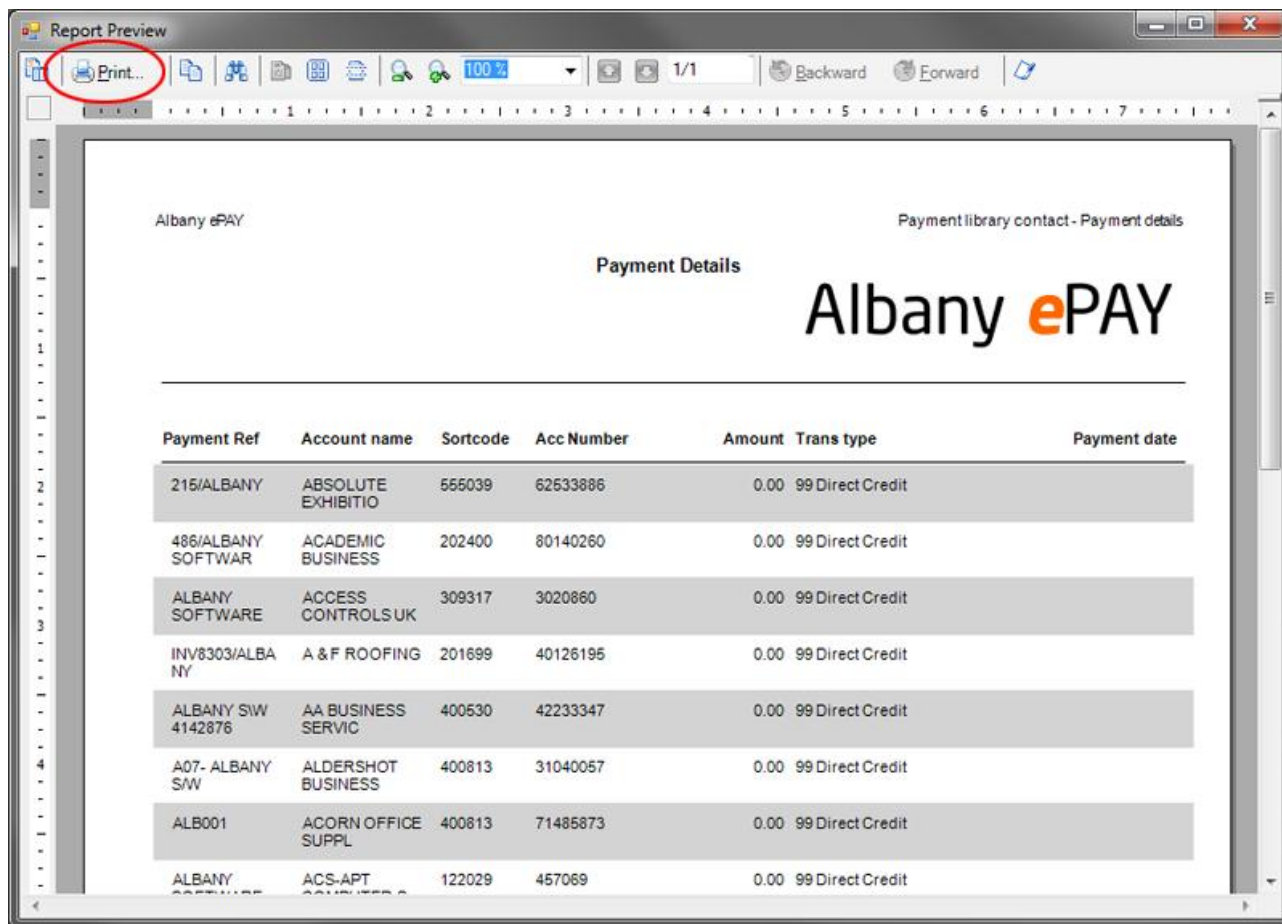
When you have selected all the required rows, click . The following dialog will load:



**Figure 114: Print contacts dialog**

If no records were selected, the **Print selected contacts** option is disabled. By default, the option for **Print all contacts** is always selected so, if you have selected rows to be printed, you must click in the option for **Print selected contacts**. In the *Detail selection* area, **Print all details** is selected by default. To print only selected details, click in the option for Print selected details and then choose which of the details you want to include, removing the check mark for any that you don't require.

Click **OK** when ready. A report will then be produced for each of the selected details. An example of the *Address Details* report is shown in the following illustration. If you require hard copy, you can click the **Print** button on the form, circled in red below.



Payment Ref	Account name	Sortcode	Acc Number	Amount	Trans type	Payment date
215/ALBANY	ABSOLUTE EXHIBITIO	555039	62533886	0.00	99 Direct Credit	
486/ALBANY SOFTWARE	ACADEMIC BUSINESS	202400	80140260	0.00	99 Direct Credit	
ALBANY SOFTWARE	ACCESS CONTROLS UK	309317	3020860	0.00	99 Direct Credit	
INV8303/ALBANY	A & F ROOFING	201699	40126195	0.00	99 Direct Credit	
ALBANY SW 4142876	AA BUSINESS SERVIC	400530	42233347	0.00	99 Direct Credit	
A07- ALBANY SW	ALDRSHOT BUSINESS	400813	31040057	0.00	99 Direct Credit	
ALB001	ACORN OFFICE SUPPL	400813	71485873	0.00	99 Direct Credit	
ALBANY	ACS-APT	122029	457069	0.00	99 Direct Credit	

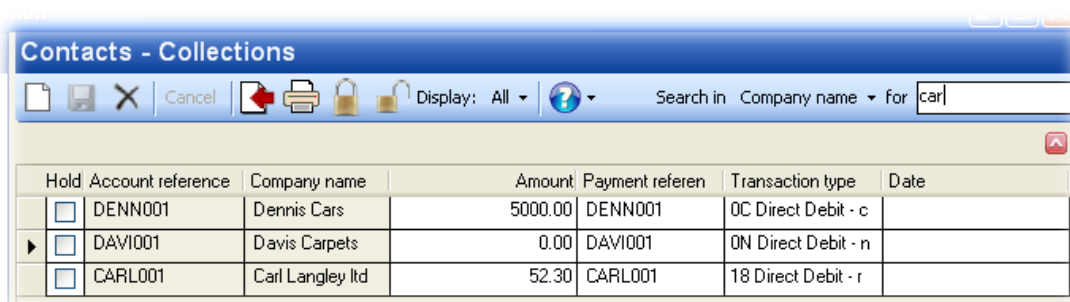
Figure 115: Contacts report example

### 7.4.3 Search

If you need to locate a specific contact record in a large list, you can search for information from one of the following columns:

- **Account reference**
- **Company name** (default)
- **Payment reference**

Using the **Search** in box, click the arrow to select the search location and in the **for** box, enter the criteria, all or part of the information. As soon as you begin typing, the search will begin, narrowing as you type more characters. As you can see from the results below, the search is not case sensitive and will search for any matching information in the selected column.



Hold	Account reference	Company name	Amount	Payment referen	Transaction type	Date
<input type="checkbox"/>	DENN001	Dennis Cars	5000.00	DENN001	0C Direct Debit - c	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	DAVI001	Davis Carpets	0.00	DAVI001	0N Direct Debit - n	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CARL001	Carl Langley Ltd	52.30	CARL001	18 Direct Debit - r	

Figure 116: Contacts search result example

### 7.4.4 Hold contact records


If you need to prevent a contact record from being used, for example while you are editing a contact record, you can set it to **Hold**. This prevents the record from being included in a payment run while you are working on it. To hold a single record, select the row and either click in the **Hold** box in the lower pane or click  on the toolbar or just click in the **Hold** column check box to the left of the row. You will see that the lower pane **Hold** box is now populated and a check mark appears in the **Hold** column for the record.




Figure 117: Hold contact


- 
- ! You may also see that the pencil symbol appears beside the ► symbol, indicating that the record has been changed and will need to be saved.
- 


To put multiple contact records on hold, select them as described above, and then click .

### Release contact records

Once contact records are in the *Hold* status, you can select them for release in the same way as described above. Click  to release them, removing the check mark from the **Hold** check box in the lower pane and from the box in the *Hold* column for the row.

### 7.4.5 Edit contact records

You will see that the current record has a ► symbol at the beginning of the row. It is the detail for this row that can be viewed in the lower pane. To edit the information, you can type directly into the tabs in the lower pane or in the selected contact record row in the upper pane grid. To select a different record, click in the area to the left of the row, the blank rectangle that precedes each row. The ► symbol moves and the row may be highlighted. Once you have finished editing one or more rows, click .

- 
- ! Even if more than one row is highlighted, only the row that is marked with the ► symbol will be edited.
- ! If you edit data directly in one of the rows, the pencil symbol will be displayed to highlight that it has been changed. The pencil symbol will clear when you move to another row. Once all edits have been made as required, you must still click  to save the changes.
- 

### 7.4.6 Delete contact records

To delete a single contact completely, select the row and click × or press the **Delete** key. You will need to confirm the action before it is completed. If you wish to delete more than one record, select all the records to be deleted, as described in paragraph 7.4.2, and press the **Delete** key. Confirm the action and the records are deleted.

## 8 Reports

Reporting is a fundamental concept that allows oversight of all processes and their status.

Processing reports in Albany ePAY generally break down into two core categories:

- Those that can be explicitly linked to a submission payment file. These include:
  - Albany ePAY processing reports that are created after validation
  - Bacs summary submission report that is provided at the end of each payment submission
  - Bacs Input report that is downloaded from the Bacs website
- Those that are not submission specific. These are all downloaded from the Bacs website and include:
  - Arrival
  - ADDACS
  - ARUCS
  - ARUDD
  - AUDDIS
  - AWACS
  - DDICA
  - UAC User Copy
  - UDD User Copy

If a user does not have 'View Details' rights to a profile then they are not able to view the detail of any of the individual transactions in the payment being processed.

---

! The reports listed here are current at the time of writing, but may change depending on Bacs requirements. Other payment methods will not produce the same reports, for example, Faster Payments provides only input reports.

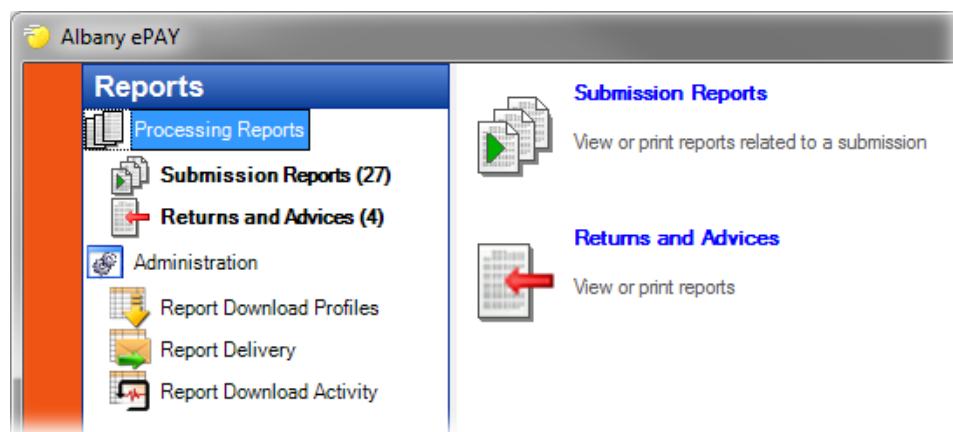
---

The **Report** menu in the navigation area includes items:

- **Processing Reports**
  - **Submission Reports** – paragraph 8.3
  - **Returns and Advices** – paragraph 8.4
- **Administration**
  - **Report Download Profiles** – paragraph 8.2
  - **Report Delivery** – paragraph 8.6
  - **Report Download Activity** – paragraph 8.7

### 8.1 Report Display

To provide a visual indication that new reports have been downloaded, either manually or automatically, there is a count of the 'unread' reports shown against the report menu item, and the menu item is shown in bold text, as shown in the following illustration:



**Figure 118: Unread report count**

The Processing report menu items are:

- Submission Reports
- Returns and Advices

It is possible to download all reports from any of the screens, but each will only display the reports relevant to that menu item, i.e. the *Submission Reports* screen only displays reports linked to a submission; the *Returns and Advices* screen only displays reports that are NOT linked to a submission; the *Payment File Reports* screen only displays reports relevant to Bureau payments before they have been added to a submission.

The current user will see an unread count for the reports that he/she has permission to view. The relevant permissions to determine rights are as follows:

- Payment Profile, View Details (for the Submission Reports count)
- SUN access (for the Returns and Advices count)

The entire row for any unread report in the report screens is displayed in bold if the report is unread. In the *Submission Reports* and *Payment File Reports* screens, any submission/payment rows that contain unread reports are displayed in bold. So if the row includes four reports and one of them is unread, the relevant row will remain bold until all reports within it have been read. Any new report, including the Albany ePAY processing reports and the submission summaries, will contribute to the unread count.

Although the unread count is only shown against the report menus detailed above, the entire row for any report that is unread is displayed in bold in any place that it is displayed (e.g. the *Processing Wizard*, *Reports* screen, the *Pending/Sent/Complete*, *Details* screens).

---

! The grid can be customised to suit your requirements. See chapter 9 for more information.

---

Viewing, printing emailing or exporting a report from any screen/wizard, not just the report screens, marks it as read so that it will NOT be displayed in bold.

### 8.1.1 Manual marking

A manual facility to mark as read/unread option is also provided in the *Payment File Reports*, *Submission Reports* and *Returns and Advices* screens. It is possible to multi select items to mark as read/unread by using the standard Window **Ctrl**+ click or **SHIFT**+ click combinations.

To mark one or more selected rows as read, click . To mark one or more selected rows as unread, click .

When a report is marked as read, the report row will no longer be displayed in bold. If there are no unread reports (or once all unread reports have been read) then the count indication is removed from the report menus and the menu item is not displayed in bold.

- 
- ! Where reports are grouped, such as Submission Reports, the group row is not displayed as read until all the reports in the group have been read.
- 

### 8.1.2 Filter read/unread

In the *Returns and Advices* screen, there is an option to filter the display to show just the unread reports.

Whether a report is unread or not is determined on a system basis, not an individual user basis. For example, if User1 marks a report as read then, when synchronised, User2 will also see that report as read.

The unread count against the menu items will be updated whenever a change is made within the report screen currently being viewed. For example, if the user opens or prints a report in the *Returns and Advices* screen which causes it to be marked as read, then the current counts for all of the menu items will be updated.

- 
- ! It must be remembered that it is possible that other users may have made changes that affect the unread count in the meantime as well, as these changes will also be reflected in the new counts once they are updated.
- 

You can fresh the count to synchronise with all other users by clicking .

The *Returns and Advices* screen includes three date columns sortable as date/time values as follows:

- **Download Date**

This is the date/time that the report was downloaded from Bacs to Albany ePAY.

- **Processing Date**

This is the processing date of the report (part of the downloaded information). The column will only display the date as the time is not relevant.

- **Created Date**

This is the date/time on which the report was created.

### 8.1.3 Delete

You can select and delete reports from the *Returns and Advices* screen. You will be asked to confirm deletion.

To select continuous multiple reports, select the first in the list to be selected, hold down the **Shift key** and click the last in the list to be selected. All rows are selected.

To select multiple reports that are not adjacent, select the first to be included, hold down the **Ctrl** key and whilst holding it down, click the row for each report to be selected. This can also be used to deselect reports selected either using the **Ctrl** or the **Shift key**.

- 
- ! Deleting reports only applies to Bacs reports associated with a submission, i.e. those listed in the *Returns and Advices* screen. It does NOT apply to Albany ePAY reports.
- 

When a report is deleted it is removed from the system completely and does not need to be archived/purged by the periodic housekeeping process. A copy is not kept. Unread reports that are deleted are removed from the unread count.

### 8.1.4 Sort


Reports can be sorted by any of the column data in ascending or descending order. To sort a list of reports, click the column header by which you wish to sort. Sorting is normally by alphanumeric values with the exception of the date columns which are sorted by date.

## 8.2 Report Download Profiles

In order to automatically download Bacs reports, configuration is simple and includes an option to schedule automatic downloading.

This feature also allows the configuration of more than one report download profile. For example: a profile can be configured to collect Input Reports multiple times per day to allow them to be tied to their associated submissions, and another for downloading the remaining returns and advices only once each week.

### 8.2.1 Create a new Report Download Profile

Navigate to **Reports, Report Download Profiles**. In the *Report Download Profiles* screen on the right, existing profiles will be listed in the upper pane. To create a new profile, click . A new profile item is created. In the **Report Retrieval** tab, replace the default **Name** for the new item with a useful descriptive name. At this point you should save the profile even though you may not have made any specific selections. Once saved, you will see that the **Schedule** button in the **Report Retrieval** tab is enabled.



**Figure 119: New Report Download Profile**

There are a number of options presented in the tab to allow a precise configuration to specific which reports will be included, based on several possible criteria. These are:

- **Payment Method**

Any licensed payment method can be selected for report retrieval from the list provided by clicking the filter arrow to the right. Bacs indicates the 3 day Bacs payment method which is always listed. If you have another available you can select it as an alternative.

- **Retrieval selection**

Below the Payment Method selection, options are provided to:

- **Retrieve all**

Retrieves all available reports even if already viewed.


- **Retrieve all unread reports**

This is the default option and will ignore reports that have already been downloaded.

- **Retrieve a filtered list**

This option allows powerful and specific filtering of which reports are to be downloaded when using this profile. Once selected, the **Report Filter** area is enabled. A description of usage is provided in the following table:


Item	Description
<b>SUN</b> (Service User Number)	When a specific SUN is selected, only reports for that SUN will be included.
<b>Report type</b>	A list of reports available for download for the Payment Method selected. When selecting the <b>Report type</b> click the name. If you wish to select more than one report type, hold down the <b>Ctrl</b> key as you click is report type you wish to include. The report types available depend on the requirements applicable to the payment method selected.
<b>Previous X days</b>	This indicates the number of days for which you require the reports. This is up to 31 days for Bacs 3 day payments or limited to 4 days for Faster Payments.
<b>All</b>	Include all available specified reports regardless of date.
<b>Include generic test reports</b>	Allows you to include generic test reports as well as other specific reports.
<b>Only unread reports</b>	This will exclude any reports that have not been read.

When you have made the selections you need, click .

### 8.2.2 Scheduling

Once a report download profile has been saved, a schedule can be set up for automatic retrieval of the reports. Click the **Schedule** button to proceed.

- 
- ! Although you can set up Report download profiles, you may not schedule automatic downloads from Bacs unless you have an HSM licensed and installed on your workstation (see paragraph 3.10.2 for more information).
  - ! Whenever reports are scheduled to download automatically, the user is ALWAYS the SystemUser. For this reason the system user MUST be associated with a valid Bacs User Certificate. Paragraph 5.7.6 refers.
- 

The *Schedules* dialog is specific to the profile selected. Existing schedules will be listed on the left. As this is a new profile, that area is currently blank. Click . The right hand side of the window is now enabled for you to set up the schedule. The following example shows a schedule set up for hourly retrieval every day.

Schedules - Input Reports

Name: Hourly input Copy From Profile ▼ ☐ Active ☒ On Hold

Please select the recurrence options for this schedule

Recurrence

☐ One Time Only Every 1 Day(s)

☒ Daily

☐ Weekly

☐ Monthly

On non-working days Do Not Run ▼

Time

Connect to Bacs to retrieve reports at 09:00:00

then Run every (mins) 60 until 18:00:00

Range of Recurrence

Start Date 15/08/2011 End Date 15/08/2021

Exit

**Figure 120: New hourly report retrieval schedule**

You should provide a descriptive **Name** for the schedule. Each schedule for a profile must have a unique name within the profile although the same schedule name can be used in different profiles.

As you create a schedule, if you wish you can copy a previously designed schedule from another profile. For this reason, the name for the schedule should assist in identifying what the schedule represents. Using the **Name** box, type a name for the schedule. You will find it useful to use the name as a short but clear description for possible copying at a later date. This copy facility can be seen in the **Copy From Profile** selector to the right. There is no link existing between the schedules in the two profiles once a copy has been made, so individual changes can be made to each without them being reflected in the other.

### Copy From Profile

If a schedule has already been established in another profile, you can copy the schedule from this profile. In the profile, click the **Schedule** button and then click the **Copy From Profile** filter at the top of the *Schedule* form. Profiles with schedules will be listed; the name of the profile followed by the name of the schedule. Select the one you wish to use. The form will adjust to show the selected schedule. You can then edit it manually if you wish. You may also wish to change the name that has been completed automatically on import.



**Figure 121: Copy schedule**

## On Hold

By default, a new schedule is placed **On Hold** on the right. Only change this to **Active** when you are ready for the schedule to run. You can also change from **Active** to **On Hold** at any time if you wish to pause or stop the schedule for any period, for example when you wish to check, modify or update the schedule.

## Recurrence

The occasions when a schedule can be initiated are extremely flexible. The default option is a single, **One Time Only**. You can make the schedule regular by choosing **Daily**, **Weekly** or **Monthly**. For each of these selected options further selections are presented on the form:

The following recurrence patterns are available for selection:

- *One Time Only*

Run once performs the selected step within one specified window only and does not have a recurrence pattern once that window is complete.

Within the *Run once* schedule a start schedule date selection is mandatory. The default is the current date and the selected date must not be earlier than the current date.

- *Daily*

The *Daily* schedule option performs the configured tasks every day

There is an option to repeat the schedule every 'x' days where x is configurable from 1 to 999.

- *Weekly*

The *Weekly* schedule option performs the configured tasks at weekly intervals with an option to repeat the schedule every 'x' weeks where x is configurable from 1 to 999.

There is an option to select the day(s) of the week on which the task runs. Monday – Friday is selected by default.

- *Monthly*

The *Monthly* schedule performs the configured tasks at monthly intervals with an option to repeat the schedule:

- On fixed day(s) of selected month(s),

OR

- On a relative day (e.g. the last day of the month) of selected month(s).

In addition, you determine if the payment is initiated on a non-working day or not. Non-working days for the scheduler are defined as Sat/Sun and Bank Holidays. The default is not to run, in which case the next available working day will be used instead.

You select the options that you need to use for the payment run based also on what your working setup can accommodate.

## Time

The next area of the form is where you select the time options. The default time for initiating the profile is 09:00. Use the spinner control to adjust this time. Then select the interval at which the system will be polled in order to search for a valid input file. It is recommended that the interval is set to a value that will allow your system to work efficiently. This will depend on your requirements. This can be set to run until a specified end time (which must be later than the start time) or until a valid input file has been found. There is also a checkbox for you to specify that an error be reported if a suitable input file is not found during the time window specified.

Alternatively, you can select the option to run the schedule continuously. This will run automatically at the most frequent interval possible.

- 
- ! For windows that have no end time the start time is considered to be the end time of the window, for example, if the task is set to only run at 09:00 daily then the payment file will be created at 09:00.
- 

Where a scheduled start time is missed, for example if the service was not running at the time of the scheduled start, it will be run as soon as possible on resuming the service.

An option is provided for the schedule to run until the input file has been found. This allows time for the input file to be compiled, but once in the required location, the payment profile will run and then cease the polling schedule. An additional option is provided so that, if any input file is not found during the specified window, then an error will be reported.

## Range of recurrence

Finally, you can specify a **Start Date** from which the recurrence pattern will commence. The default date is the current date.

With the exception of a 'Run Once' schedule pattern, it is possible to select that the schedule will repeat until:

- Further notice (default),

OR

- A specified date. If this is selected, the default value will be the current date. The selected date cannot be earlier than the current date.

If you have chosen a repeat recurrence, you can also select the date on which the schedule will cease by selecting the **End Date** checkbox and specifying, from the provided calendar control, the required date.

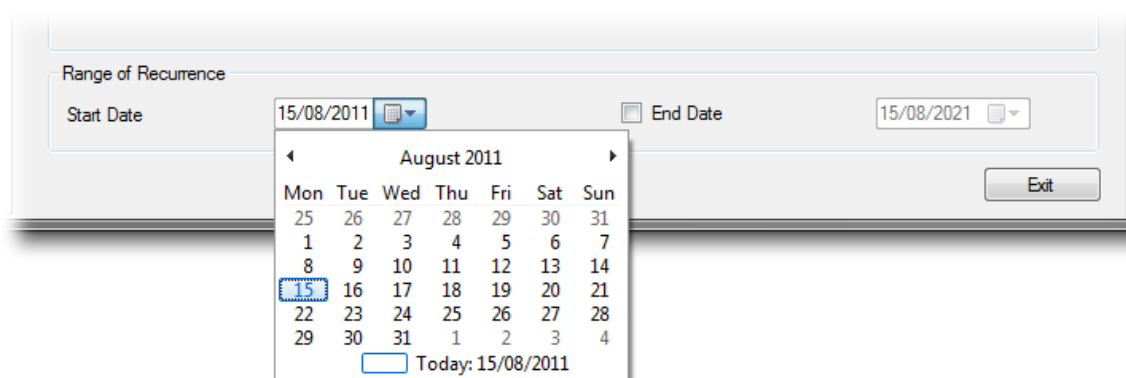



Figure 122: Report schedule start date

## Set the schedule


Finally, when you wish to, you can click  to save the schedule. However, if you wish to start the schedule running and have not already done so, ensure that you click the **Active** option button at the top right of the form before clicking **OK**. You can reopen the schedule to do this if you prefer.

The schedule is now saved and automatically attached to the profile. Click **Exit** to close the *Schedule* dialog.


- 
- ! If you forget to save the schedule, when you click exit you will be prompted to do so.
-

### 8.2.3 View an existing Report Download Profile

Navigate to **Reports, Report Download Profiles**. In the *Report Download Profiles* screen on the right, existing profiles will be listed in the upper pane. When any profile is selected, the details for that profile are then displayed in the pane below. These details include a tab for **Report Retrieval** and another for **Notifications**.

Select any of the reports listed and edit as required in the lower pane. You can edit the details if required. To save changes, click . Click **Exit** to close the *Schedule* dialog.

### 8.2.4 Notifications


In the event that a scheduled download fails for any reason, you can specify one or more users or groups to receive a notification. To set this up, in the *Report Download Profiles* screen select the report for which you want to setup notifications. In the lower pane, select the **Notifications** tab. Click in the checkbox to the left of the **Send a notification if a schedule download fails to** box and click  to load a *Pick Recipients* dialog from which you can select the individual users, groups or contacts that are to receive notification of schedule download failure.

- 
- ! If a valid email address has not been set up for any user nominated to receive notifications (either individually or as part of a specified group), an error message will inform you of the fact when you save the profile.
- 

Select either **User** or **Group** from the **Show Names** from box. The list below will adjust accordingly. Select the identity of the group or user you wish to add from the list on the left and click the **>** button to add it to the list on the right. To add more than one item at a time, hold down the **Ctrl** key as you click each item to select them and then click **>**.

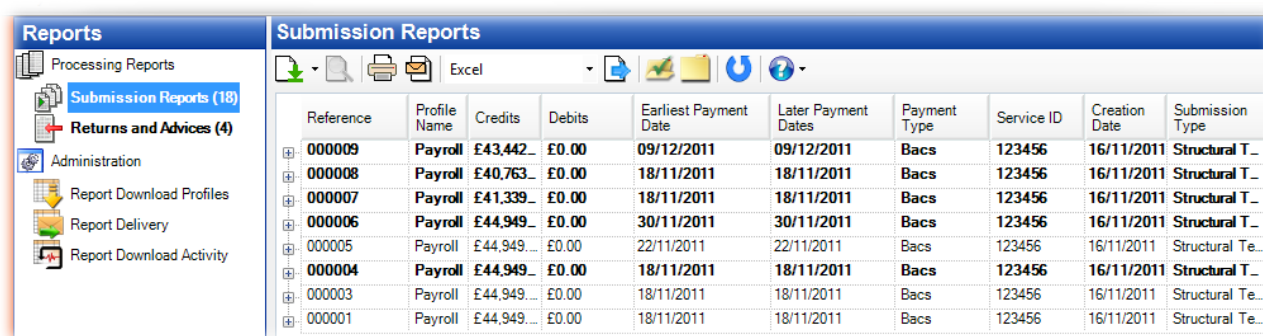
- 
- ! It is important not to have email notifications sent out unnecessarily. Check that the correct people or groups will be notified in each instance.

- 
- ! To remove an item from the list on the right, click the item (or items, using the **Ctrl** key) and click **<**.
- 

When you are satisfied that the list is correctly populated, click **OK**. The name(s) of users, groups or contacts you selected now appear in the **Send a notification if a schedule download fails to** box. User names are prefixed with **U**, Group names with **G** and Contact names with **C**. Click  to save the settings.

## 8.3 Submission Reports

Navigate here from the **Reports** menu, **Submission Reports**. The following is an example of the *Submission Reports* screen in the default compact mode.



Reference	Profile Name	Credits	Debits	Earliest Payment Date	Later Payment Dates	Payment Type	Service ID	Creation Date	Submission Type
000009	Payroll	£43,442	£0.00	09/12/2011	09/12/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural T...
000008	Payroll	£40,763	£0.00	18/11/2011	18/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural T...
000007	Payroll	£41,339	£0.00	18/11/2011	18/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural T...
000006	Payroll	£44,949	£0.00	30/11/2011	30/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural T...
000005	Payroll	£44,949	£0.00	22/11/2011	22/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural Te...
000004	Payroll	£44,949	£0.00	18/11/2011	18/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural T...
000003	Payroll	£44,949	£0.00	18/11/2011	18/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural Te...
000001	Payroll	£44,949	£0.00	18/11/2011	18/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural Te...

Figure 123: Compacted Submission Reports

Click  to the left of a submission row to view the available reports for that submission.





















Submission Reports									
									
Reference	Profile Name	Credits	Debits	Earliest Payment Date	Later Payment Dates	Payment Type	Service ID	Creation Date	Submission Type
 000009	Payroll	£43,442...	£0.00	09/12/2011	09/12/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural T...
 000008	Payroll	£40,763...	£0.00	18/11/2011	18/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural T...
 000007	Payroll	£41,339...	£0.00	18/11/2011	18/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural T...
 000006	Payroll	£44,949...	£0.00	30/11/2011	30/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural T...
Report Type		Name		Report Created Date		Status			
ePAY - Summary		Payroll Summary Report		16/11/2011 14:17:58					
ePAY - Detailed		Payroll Detailed Report		16/11/2011 14:17:58					
ePAY - Warnings		Payroll Warning Report		16/11/2011 14:17:58					
Reference	Profile Name	Credits	Debits	Earliest Payment Date	Later Payment Dates	Payment Type	Service ID	Creation Date	Submission Type
 000005	Payroll	£44,949...	£0.00	22/11/2011	22/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural Te...
 000004	Payroll	£44,949...	£0.00	18/11/2011	18/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural T...
 000003	Payroll	£44,949...	£0.00	18/11/2011	18/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural Te...
 000001	Payroll	£44,949...	£0.00	18/11/2011	18/11/2011	Bacs	123456	16/11/2011	Structural Te...

Figure 124: Expanded Submission Reports

Double click to open a report or select it and click  (examples are supplied in Figure 126 and Figure 127). Selected reports can also be printed , emailed  or exported  using the buttons provided on the toolbar. Mark reports read or unread by selecting the row(s) and clicking either  (Mark As Read) or  (Mark Unread). These buttons are not enabled until you select one or more report types. Hold down the **Ctrl** key as you click on report types to select more than one.

### 8.3.1 From the payment wizard

Once you have started the Payment Wizard you can also view reports directly on the current submission by clicking the **Reports** button on the right of the *Submission Details* area of the wizard.

Detailed and summary reports are available to view for a submission.

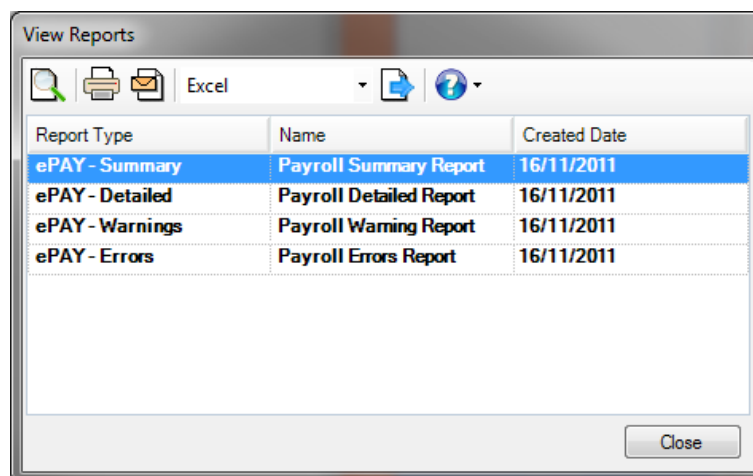

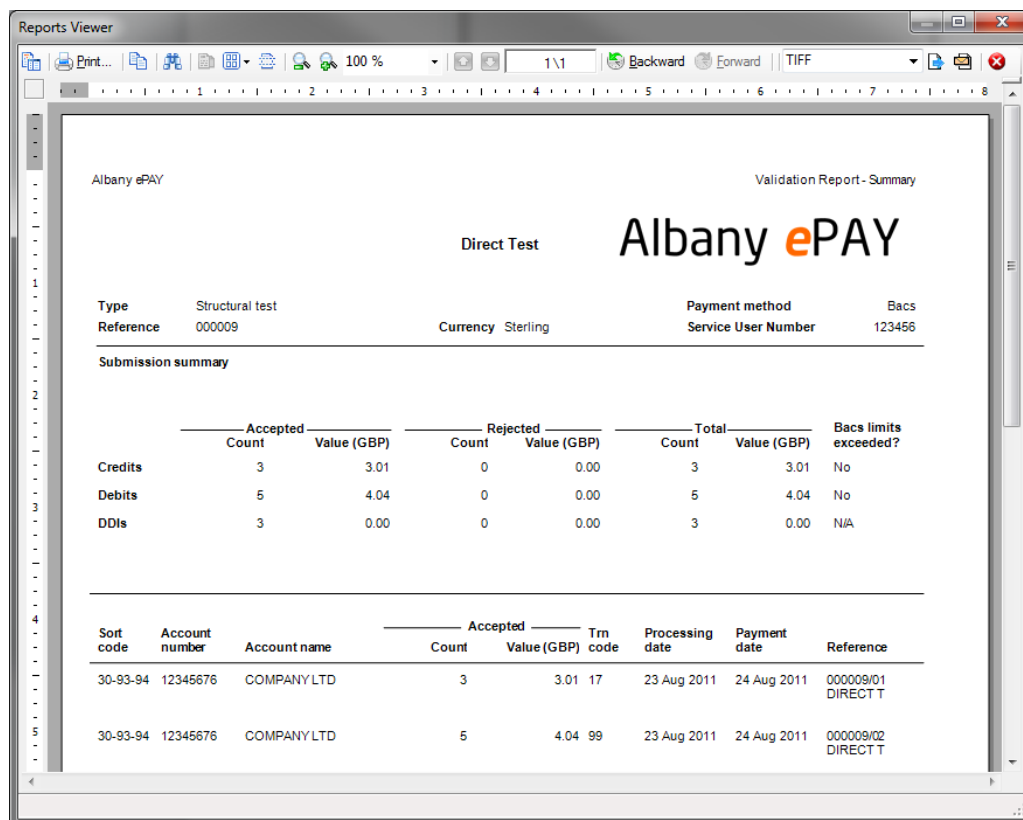


Figure 125: View Reports dialog

! You will see that the first column displays the **Report Type**, the report **Name** and the **Created Date**. The report **Name** is compiled from the name of the profile used and the report type.

You can view the reports immediately by double clicking the report name or selecting the report and clicking .



Albany ePAY

Validation Report - Summary

Direct Test

Albany ePAY

Type: Structural test  
Reference: 000009  
Currency: Sterling  
Payment method: Bacs  
Service User Number: 123456

Submission summary

	Accepted Count	Accepted Value (GBP)	Rejected Count	Rejected Value (GBP)	Total Count	Total Value (GBP)	Bacs limits exceeded?
Credits	3	3.01	0	0.00	3	3.01	No
Debits	5	4.04	0	0.00	5	4.04	No
DDIs	3	0.00	0	0.00	3	0.00	N/A

Sort code	Account number	Account name	Accepted Count	Accepted Value (GBP)	Trn code	Processing date	Payment date	Reference
30-93-94	12345676	COMPANY LTD	3	3.01	17	23 Aug 2011	24 Aug 2011	000009/01 DIRECT T
30-93-94	12345676	COMPANY LTD	5	4.04	99	23 Aug 2011	24 Aug 2011	000009/02 DIRECT T

Figure 126: Example summary report



Reports Viewer

Albany ePAY

Validation Report - Detailed

Direct Test

Albany ePAY

Type	Structural test	Currency	Payment method	Bacs
Reference	000009	Sterling	Service User Number	123456

Sort code	Account number	Account name	Accepted value	Tm code	Reference	Processing date
40-09-26	51343955	MR AND MRS THOMAS	1.01	99	REFERENCE010000000	23 Aug 2011
40-09-26	51343955	MR AND MRS THOMAS	0.99	99	REFERENCE020000000	23 Aug 2011
40-09-26	51343955	MR AND MRS THOMAS	1.01	17	REFERENCE030000000	23 Aug 2011
40-09-26	51343955	MR AND MRS THOMAS	0.01	17	REFERENCE040000000	23 Aug 2011
40-09-26	51343955	MR AND MRS THOMAS	1.01	01	REFERENCE050000000	23 Aug 2011
40-09-26	51343955	MR AND MRS THOMAS	1.01	18	REFERENCE060000000	23 Aug 2011
40-09-26	51343955	MR AND MRS THOMAS	0.00	0N	REFERENCE070000000	23 Aug 2011
40-09-26	51343955	MR AND MRS THOMAS	0.00	0N	REFERENCE080000000	23 Aug 2011
40-09-26	51343955	MR AND MRS THOMAS	1.00	17	REFERENCE090000000	23 Aug 2011
40-09-26	51343955	MR AND MRS THOMAS	0.00	0S	REFERENCE100000000	23 Aug 2011
40-09-26	51343955	MR AND MRS THOMAS	1.01	99	REFERENCE110000000	23 Aug 2011

Transactions summary (Contras)

30-93-94	12345676	COMPANY LTD	3.01	17	000009/01 DIRECT T	23 Aug 2011
30-93-94	12345676	COMPANY LTD	4.04	99	000009/02 DIRECT T	23 Aug 2011

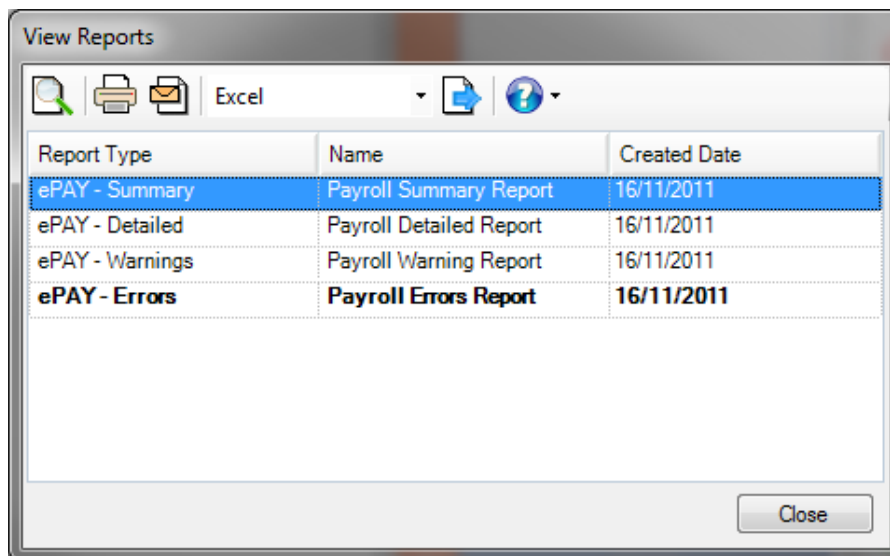
Figure 127: Example detailed report

- ! Tools are provided at the top of the window so that you can print, search, change the zoom, change the number of pages you see at a time, switch pages, change format, export and email.


To close these reports, click **X** in the top right corner.

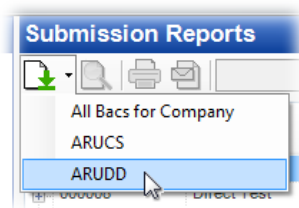
When you have finished with the reports, click **Close** in the bottom right corner of the *View Reports* dialog.

- ! Once the reports listed in the *View Reports* dialog have been read, they will no longer be displayed in bold as shown in the following illustration:



**Figure 128: View Reports dialog showing read reports**

In addition to the above, if you have any preconfigured Report Download Profiles, you can run them from the *Submission Reports* screen. To do this, click the filter arrow to the right of the  button. Any existing Report Download Profiles are listed. Select the one you wish to run.



**Figure 129: Select Report Download Profile**

The *Reports Retrieval* wizard will load with an option to change the criteria selection if needed. Change the criteria if you need to and click **Next >**. The reports will be downloaded if any are available within the criteria specified.


## 8.4 Returns and Advices

Once you have made a submission you may want to download the relevant reports associated with that submission. Navigate to **Reports, Returns and Advices**.

---

! These reports can be downloaded in any reports screen, but are displayed only in the *Reports and Advices* screen.

---

Click  to start the report download process or use one of the pre-defined Report Download Profiles (if there are any) by clicking the filter arrow to the right of this button, as follows:

**Reports Retrieval - Criteria Selection**

Please select the criteria on which to search for reports

Report Retrieval

Payment method: Bacs

☐ Retrieve all
 ☒ Retrieve all unread reports
 ☐ Retrieve a filtered list

Report Filter

SUN

Report type: Arrival

☐ Specific date: 16/11/2011
 ☐ Previous: 0 days
 ☒ All

☐ Include generic test reports
 ☒ Only unread reports

Help < Back Next > Cancel

**Figure 130: Reports retrieval – Criteria selection**

This dialog contains a number of tools which you can use to set the report download criteria, as follows:

Area	Item	Description
------	------	-------------

Area	Item	Description
<b>Report Retrieval</b>	<b>Payment Method</b>	Select the payment method you used in the submission, for example Bacs or Faster Payments.
	<b>Retrieve all</b>	Retrieves all reports of all types regardless of whether they have already been read or not.
	<b>Retrieve all unread reports</b>	Retrieves all unread reports of all types (default option).
	<b>Retrieve a filtered list</b>	When you select this option, the area below is enabled, presenting further filtering options to retrieve reports based upon a number of filter criteria. The <b>Report Filter</b> area is enabled when this option is selected.
<b>Report Filter</b>	<b>SUN</b>	Filter by the Service User Number.
	<b>Report Type</b>	Select from a list of applicable reports <sup>3</sup> .
	<b>Specific Date</b>	Returns reports for a specified date only.
	<b>Previous</b>	Retrieve reports for a specific number of days preceding the current date. This is up to a maximum of 31 days for Bacs 3 day or 4 days for Faster Payments.
	<b>All</b>	Include all reports
	<b>Include generic test reports</b>	Allows you to include generic test reports as well as other specific reports.
	<b>Only unread reports</b>	Returns only reports that have not yet been viewed (selected by default).

When you have made your criteria selection, click **Next >** to proceed.

You will see the form change as the export is processed. If you use the Smart Card system, a PIN challenge is displayed. You must have your Smart Card plugged in and be ready to enter the associated PIN. Once you have entered your PIN, click **OK**. The download will complete and all the reports matching your selected criteria will be listed.

<sup>3</sup> The list provided is directly applicable to current Bacs reports and may change at any time depending on Bacs requirements. Faster Payments provides only an input report.

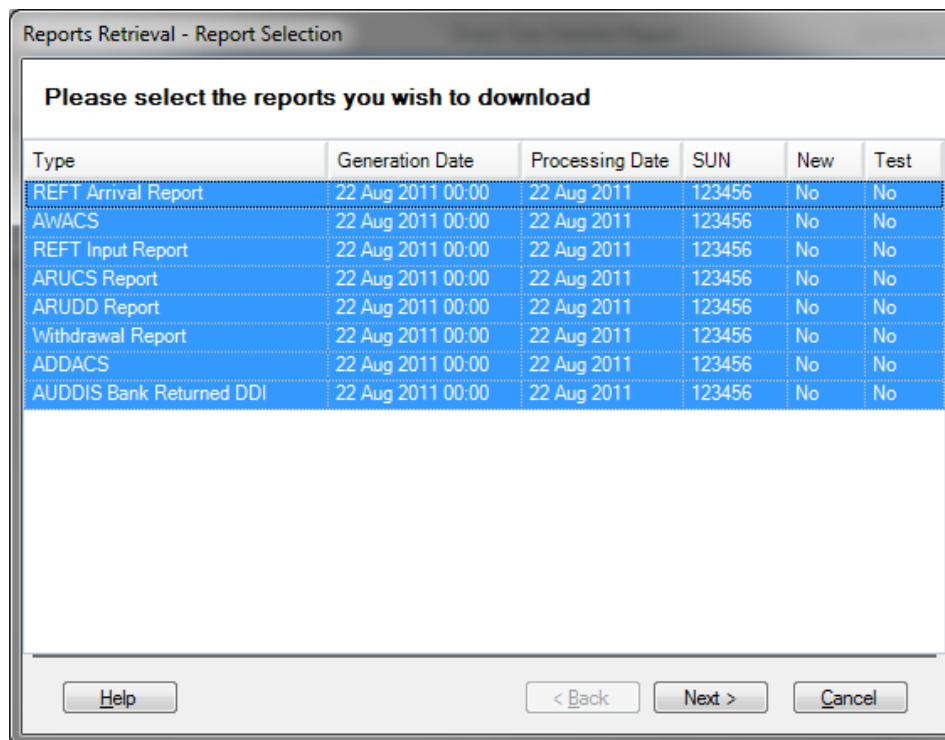


Figure 131: Report retrieval – Report selection

By default, all reports within your specified criteria are selected. However, you can manually refine this list further if you wish. Click a report row to select just that row. Hold down the **Ctrl** key as you click to select/deselect more than one row. When you have selected all the reports you require, click **Finish**.

! If you want you can leave the entire list selected and deselect only those reports you don't want by holding down the **Ctrl** key and clicking the report rows you don't want.

When you click the **Finish** button, the download completes and all the selected reports are listed in the *Returns and Advices* screen for you to view or export.

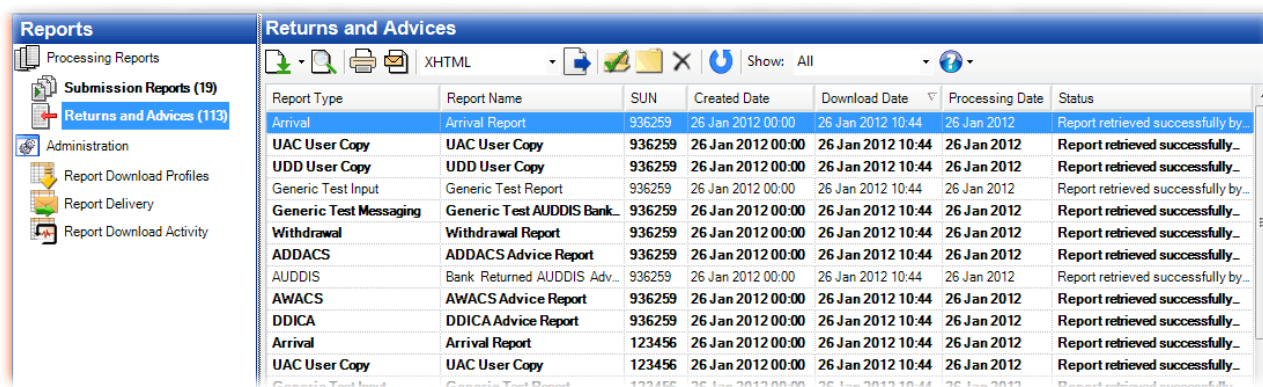


Figure 132: Example Returns and Advices screen results

Double click to open a report or select it and click . Selected reports can also be printed , emailed or exported using the buttons provided on the toolbar. Mark reports read or unread by selecting the row(s) and clicking either (Mark As Read) or (Mark As Unread). These buttons

are not enabled until you select one or more report types. Hold down the **Ctrl** key as you click on report types to select more than one row.

---

! When exporting a report, select the format you wish to export before clicking .

---

## 8.5 Report Security

In order that security is applied to reports so that they can only be viewed by authorised persons. Reports are controlled in permissions for users and or groups in the permissions screen under *View Details* wherever report access may be required. This covers Report Download Activity and then individually for each profile on the system. *View Details* permission can be assigned to any group or individual for default access for new profiles if required.

For each group or user that you wish to have the ability to view, print, export or email ALL reports, in the relevant reports row, ensure that there is a checkmark in the box for *View Details*.

See paragraph 5.7 for information on applying permissions.

## 8.6 Report Delivery

If email addresses have been set up and recipients are able to receive them, you can arrange for reports to be emailed to one or more users, groups or contacts. You can also arrange for reports to be automatically exported to a file location you specify.


Navigate to **Reports, Administration, Report Delivery**. You can create one or more report delivery settings as required. Click  on the toolbar. In the **Report Delivery** tab in the lower pane, type a name for the settings. This name must be unique. It is useful if the name you choose describes which reports will be included.

Figure 133: Report Delivery screen

### 8.6.1 Select SUNs

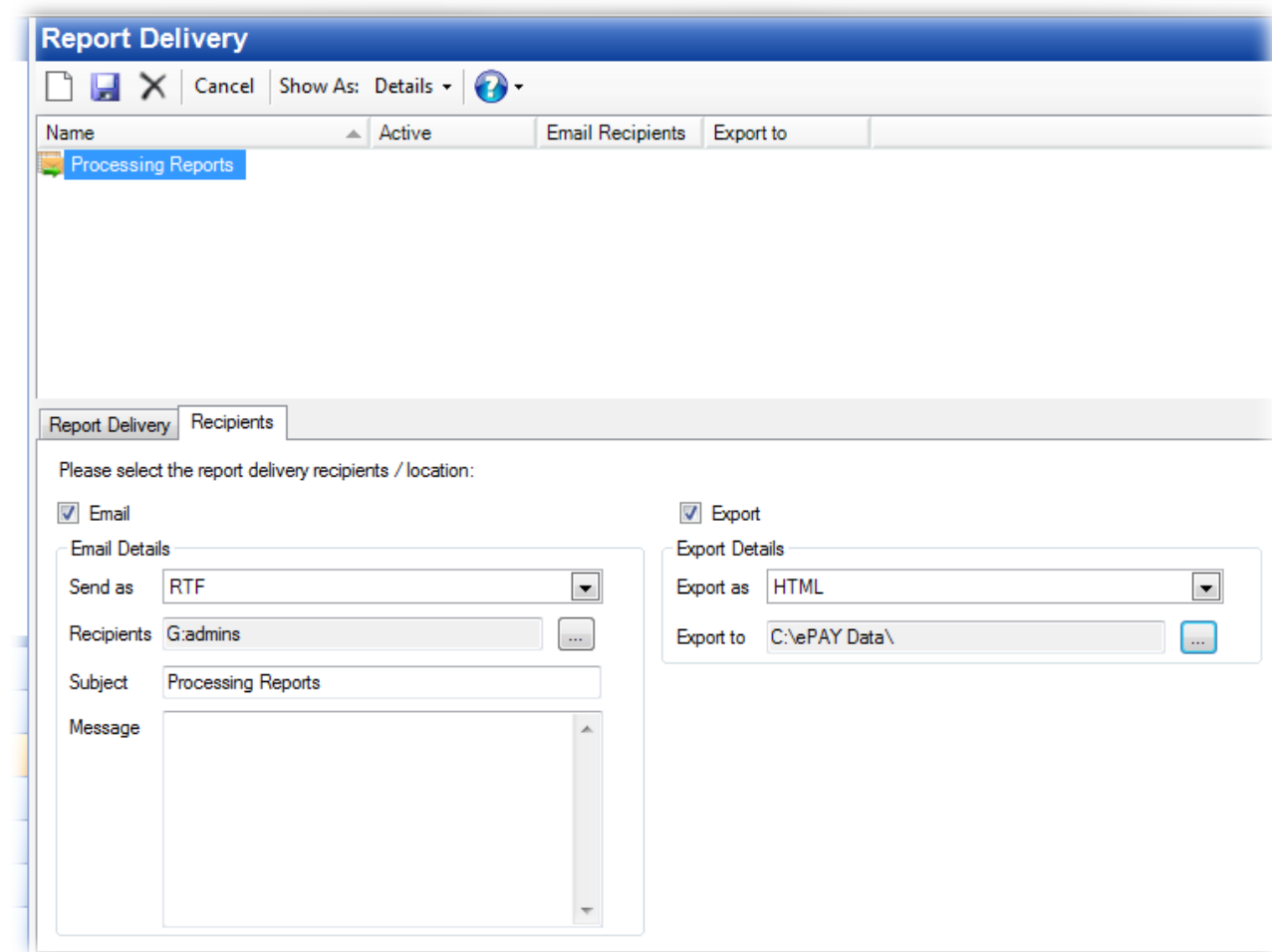
You can choose to select reports that relate to any SUN registered in Albany ePAY by clicking the filter arrow to the right and selecting one or more from the list provided. You can also select all SUNs from this list or click the **All** checkbox to the left. If necessary, you can click the Include Unknown checkbox to include payments that relate to unknown SUNs where the information may have been supplied from the Input file rather than registered directly in Albany ePAY, or to payments that do not require a SUN, such as an RBS Bankline payment.

### 8.6.2 Select reports

In the lower area, there are three sections, one for processing reports produced internally by Albany ePAY, one for Bacs Submission Reports and one for Bacs Returns and Advices. A checkbox is provided at the top for each of these so that all applicable reports can be selected quickly. Alternatively, you can check each required report individually.

### 8.6.3 Recipients

In order to specify email recipients or an export location, switch to the **Recipients** tab. An example of this screen is shown in the following illustration:



**Report Delivery**

Cancel Show As: Details ?

Name Active Email Recipients Export to

Processing Reports

Report Delivery Recipients

Please select the report delivery recipients / location:

☒ Email

**Email Details**

Send as: RTF

Recipients: G:admins

Subject: Processing Reports

Message:

☒ Export

**Export Details**

Export as: HTML

Export to: C:\ePAY Data\

**Figure 134: Report Delivery recipients**


By default, the report is not emailed or exported. In each case, prior to specifying the settings, click the appropriate checkbox. The remaining boxes are then enabled.

## Email

In the *Email Details* area, specify the format in which you wish the reports to be sent. The available formats will depend on the type of reports selected. The formats listed are dependent on the reports you have selected as not all reports are produced in the same output formats. Refer to paragraph 8.6.2 for information on selecting reports.



**Figure 135: Select report format**

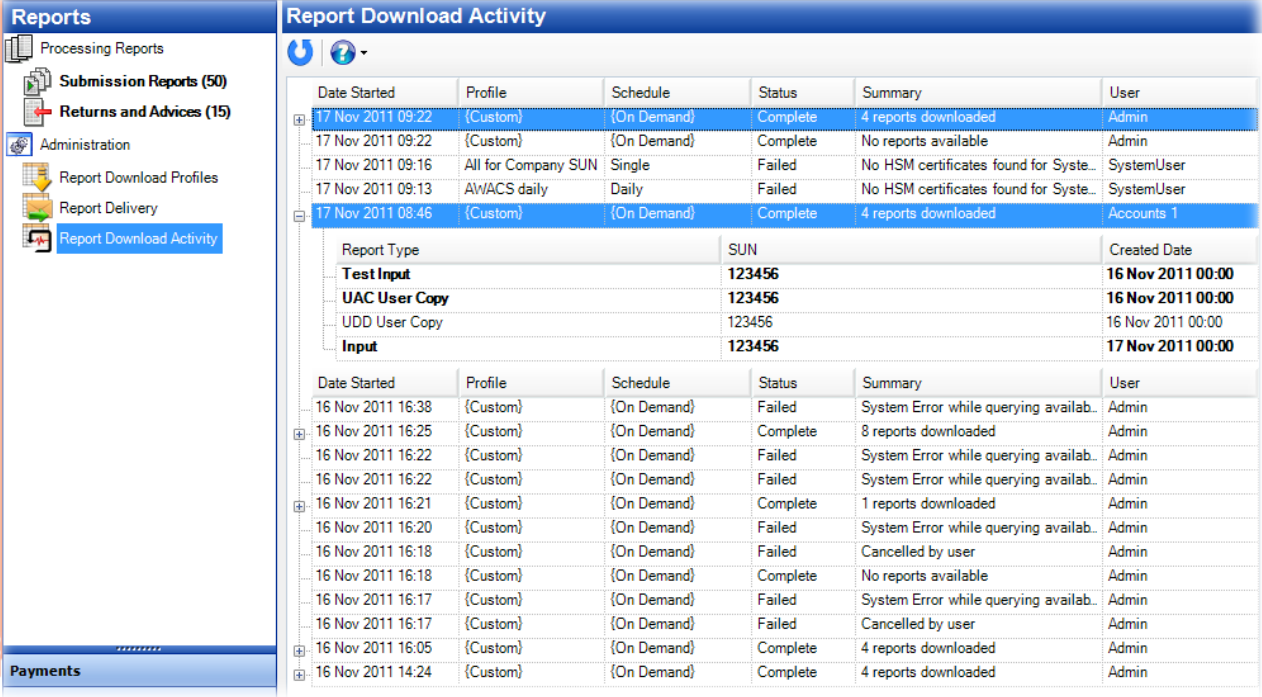
Next you need to specify the recipients of the email. Click  to the right of the **Recipients** box. This will open the **Select email recipients** dialog. Click the arrow to the right of the **Show names from** box to choose Users, Groups or Contacts. When the names appear, select any that you wish to include and click **>** to add them to the list on the right. You can add any of the Users, Groups or Contacts listed, providing that each has a valid email address assigned. For clarity, usernames are prefixed with U, groups with G and contacts with C.

**Figure 136: Select email recipients dialog**

If any of the specified recipients does not have an email address on the Albany ePAY system, a warning will be displayed when you click **OK** to close the dialog. Once you have included the email recipients and closed the dialog, the names will appear with the relevant prefix in the **Recipients** box.

Next you must specify a **Subject** for the email. This can be the same as the name you chose for the settings or something else that will be informative to the recipient. You can enter a **Message** if you wish, but this is optional.





**Figure 138: Report Download Activity expanded**

Although the purpose of this screen is to view report activity, it is also possible to view any of the listed reports can be viewed by double clicking the report name.

## 8.8 Report naming conventions

When BACS reports are created for export or email, the following naming convention is used:

ServiceID\_ReportTypeID\_ReportID\_ReportName.ext

For clarity, the following table describes each component of this name:

ServiceID	The SUN of the report
ReportTypeID	Bacs Report Type ID (e.g. 7004 for AUDDIS Rejection report, refer to the Bacs spec for a full list of codes)
ReportID	The ID of the REPORTBASE database table row
ReportName	Bacs filename (without the extension)
ext	The extension of the format being exported, e.g. XML

Exported/emailed file names for the Albany ePAY processing report (including the Submission Summary) are:


ReportID\_ReportName.ext

The SUN is not included for this type of report.

! Reports created in earlier versions will not be able to include the Bacs ReportTypeID in the export name as they were created before it was being stored, and for the same reason their **ReportName** column will only have the Bacs Report ID and not the more verbose name that is now stored.

The same naming convention is applied when reports are manually emailed/exported, unless you choose to input a specific filename during the process.

## 9 Customising grids

The columns available to view in any of the *Pending*, *Sent* or *Complete* screens can be customised to suit your requirements. You can also customise the Reporting screen grids. To customise the view, click  on the toolbar. This will open a *Choose Columns* dialog to the left.

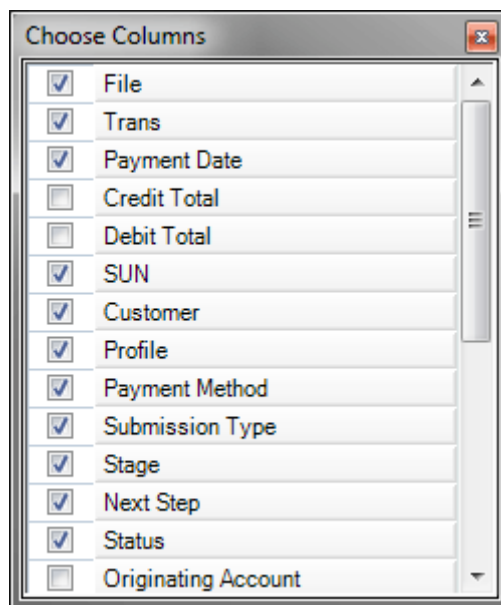



Figure 139: Choose Columns dialog

A list of all the possible columns you can have displayed indicates those currently selected and displayed with a checkmark to the left. Add or remove checkmarks to hide or display columns by clicking in the boxes as required.

When you have set up the columns the way you want, either click the X in the top right corner of the *Choose Columns* dialog, or click the  button again (you may need to click on the button twice to return focus to the form).

The columns you select to be displayed will be remembered between sessions for each user on the current workstation, so each user can keep their own preferences in this respect as long as they are using the same workstation where they set up the preferences. If any user logs on to a different workstation, he/she will need to set them up again on that workstation, if required.

### 9.1 Pinning columns

If you decide that you want to display a larger number of columns than will comfortably fit on your screen, you can pin one or more essential columns in place before scrolling left or right.

To pin a column, look at the label at the top. You will see a pin symbol to the right of the label. Click this symbol to pin the column. The pin will change to vertical, and the column label text will change to grey. Now try scrolling left or right. The column will remain 'pinned' on screen.

If you pin a column that is not positioned on the left, that column will automatically move to the left. When you pin more than one column, they will all be pinned to the left in the order in which you pin them. The following illustration shows three pinned columns and three columns that are not pinned.

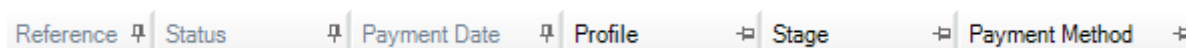


Figure 140: Column labels

To unpin a column, click the vertical pin symbol of a pinned column.

---

! When pinned columns that have been moved are unpinned, they will move immediately to the right of any remaining pinned columns, but will not return to the default location automatically.

---

## 9.2 Reordering columns

You can manually reorder columns to suit your requirements within any group of pinned or unpinned columns. If you drag a pinned column into the group of unpinned columns, the column you move will revert to unpinned automatically and if you drag an unpinned column into the group of pinned columns the moved column will become pinned.

To move a column, move your mouse pointer over the column label and drag it to the left or right over the other columns. Two red arrows will indicate the position at any given moment. Release the mouse button when the required location is reached.

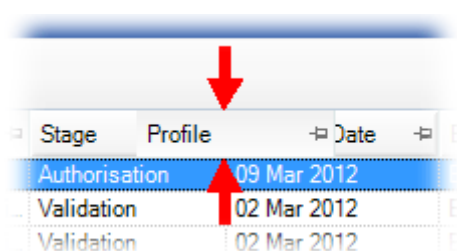


Figure 141: Column reordering

## 10 Web Links

The Web Links navigation item on the left contains links that you may find useful in your work, for example they may include a link to the Albany Support website and also the login page for Bacs. Others may be included depending on your company requirements.

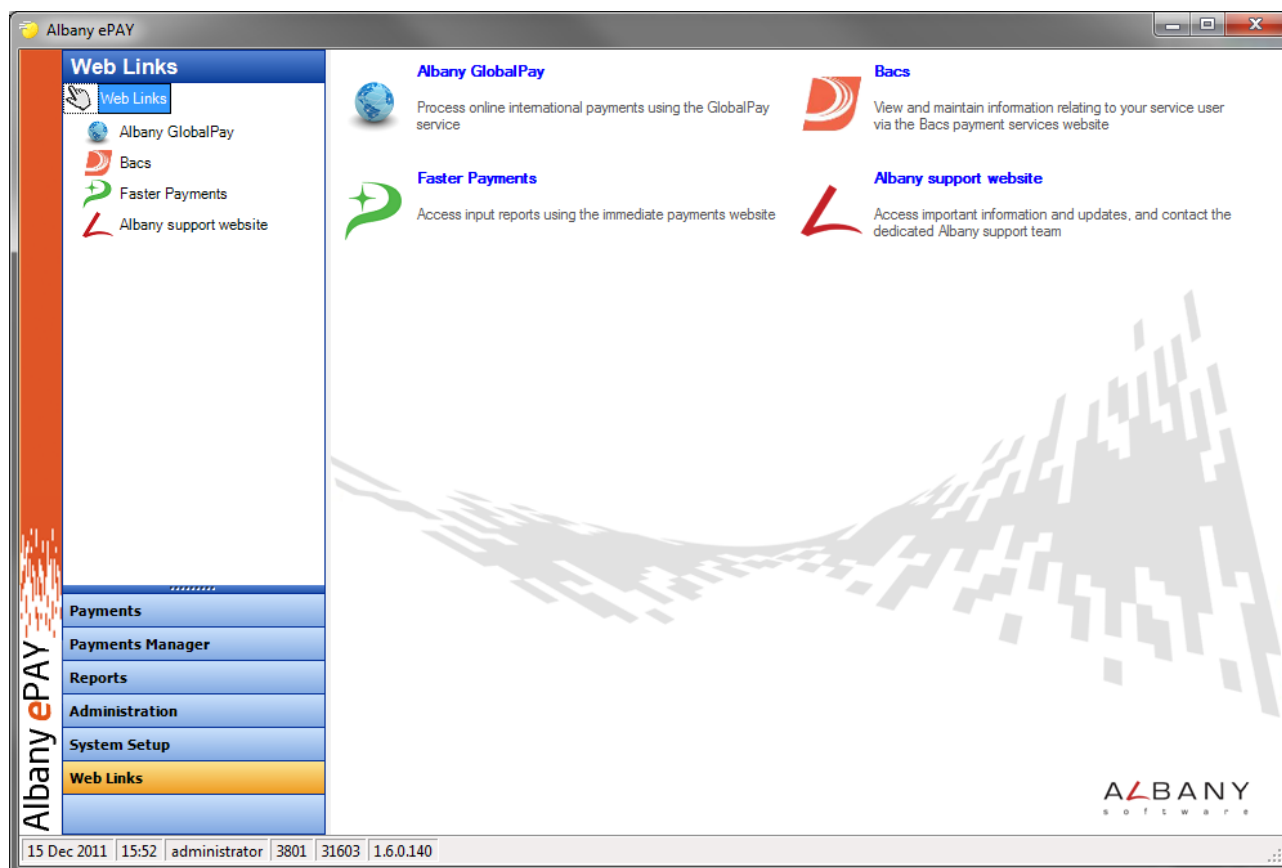


Figure 142: Web links

The web links allow the opening of the appropriate web page within Albany ePAY, thereby allowing you fast access to these websites without having to leave Albany ePAY and open another window. Simply click the link and it will open automatically. Once the web page has loaded, if further navigation is available on that site, you can use normal navigation links to switch to other pages. An example of the Albany Support page is shown here.

**ALBANY**  
s o f t w a r e

Albany onLINE    Contact Us    Request a Callback  
info@albany.co.uk    01420 547650

Solutions    Company    Events    News/Blog    Knowledge Centre    Case Studies    Careers    Support    Search Albany...

[Home](#)   [Support](#)

## Support

At Albany Software we pride ourselves on offering unparalleled levels of customer support. From receipt of order through to implementation, training and technical support, our dedicated team is on hand to guide you every step of the way.

Keeping your business exempt from major disruption is part of Albany's support service, ensuring you can continue processing your payments and collections should disaster strike. Failure to implement a reliable **Disaster Recovery solution** or contingency plan could have significant consequences for your business - don't wait until it's too late!

### Customer Support

Our dedicated customer support area features the latest product updates, important information, FAQ's and a variety of different downloads for Albany solutions.

- **Direct Debit - Best Practice**
- **Operating System Compatibility for Albany products**
- **Important update required for ALBACSp**

### Support Services

At Albany Software we offer a range of support services to ensure that you get the most out of your software.

Our dedicated technical support staff are available for via phone and email between 8am and 8pm (excluding Bank Holidays), ensuring the quick resolution of any queries you may have regarding your software or online service. Our expert consultants are also on hand to provide services such as consultancy, installation and project management, ensuring even organisations with the most complex requirements receive the optimum configuration for their software.



#### New to Albany?

[Our Solutions](#)  
[Request a Callback](#)  
[Subscribe to our Newsletter](#)  
[Albany onLINE](#)

#### Request a Support Callback

Please include details of any error messages and the point at which they appear and/or a detailed description of the problems you are experiencing

**Name \***

**Company \***

**Email \***

**Telephone Number**

**Licence Number (where applicable)**

Figure 143: Albany Support Web Page



## 11 Troubleshooting

It is not expected that you will encounter errors in the conduct of your tasks. However, in the case of configuration errors or hardware setup, you may encounter problems. As a first port of call it is recommended that you check for possible solutions here before referring to Albany Support as the solution may be simple and quick and save you time.

### 11.1 Service user permissions and access

If the service user does not have sufficient access to relevant folders on the server machine, there are likely to be problems with, for example, archiving, backing up and processing a payment file.

Some examples follow:

#### 11.1.1 Backup failure

If you have automatic backup configured, but encounter problems, it is most likely that this is a result of access permissions set up incorrectly on the server. Your system administrator should be able to resolve this by ensuring that the NETWORK SERVICE user has full read/write access to the backup/restore locations.

#### 11.1.2 Input/Output folders

If the service user does not have read access to the location in which the input files are placed prior to a payment run or does not have write access to an archive or output location, the payment will fail. Ensure that this user has been assigned appropriate windows read/write permissions. If the server is in a remote location, you may need to arrange for your IT department to set this up.

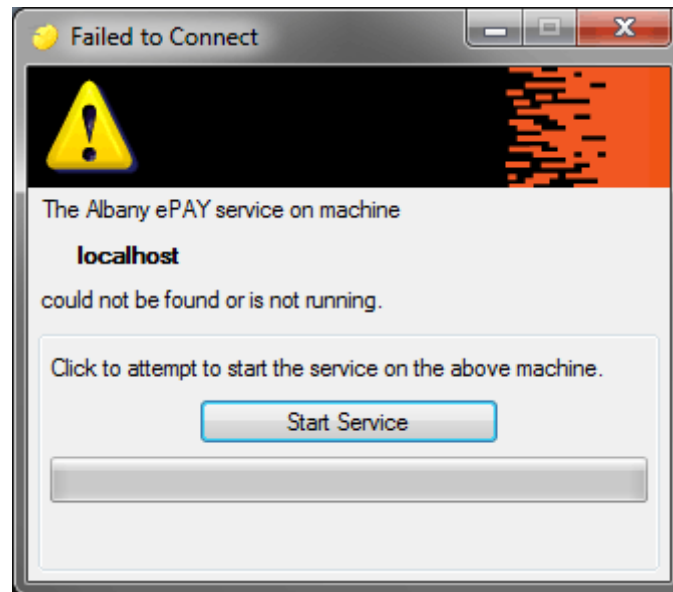
### 11.2 Submission response errors

If a submission is rejected by Bacs, you may be supplied with a rejection code. These codes are listed in Appendix E: Response messages. Most of these refer to common failures such as security with the current user, Bacs certification or a mismatch of data in the input file where it is not compatible with the file format used.

The best solution in any situation is to check all the facts carefully; that the current user is properly authorised to make a submission (see chapters 5.3 to 5.7 ; that the user is associated with a valid certificate (see paragraph 5.7.6) and, the most likely cause of a problem, that all the data supplied in the input file is correctly formatted in accordance with the file format (see paragraph 5.9.4) and that the data is valid. Common errors are rejected by Bacs because the data is invalid, such as letters included in a bank account number.

### 11.3 Failed to Connect

If, for any reason, the Albany ePAY service is not running, when you open the Albany ePAY client, an attempt will be made to start the service. In this case you may see a *Failed to Connect* message similar to that shown below:



**Figure 144: Failed to Connect message**

If you see this message, the name displayed in bold will be the name of the machine on which the server is installed. In the above illustration, this is the same machine as the one being used to run the client, but yours may differ. In any case, click the **Start Service** button. An attempt will be made to start the Albany ePAY service on the server to which the client is attempting to connect. If there are no other issues, the server should start after a short while during which the progress bar below the button will show that the attempt is being made.

If the attempt to start the service fails, the above dialog will expand to display the following:



**Figure 145: Failure message**

You must check with your IT department to ensure that there is no obvious physical failure with the server. If the problem still cannot be resolved, contact Albany Support, as described in paragraph 2.2.

## **11.4 Inability to import an input file**

There is more than one likely reason that you cannot import and input file. View the following suggestions to see if you can resolve the issue.

### **11.4.1 Cannot find the input file**

If Albany ePAY cannot find the input file, it may be because the file is not present in the expected location. Check that the path to the input file matches the path specified in the payment profile you are using and that the input file is present in that location. Appendix A: Payment profile processing rules provides a full description of these settings. The input file name and location is described on page 162.

The following diagram should help you to identify and resolve this issue:

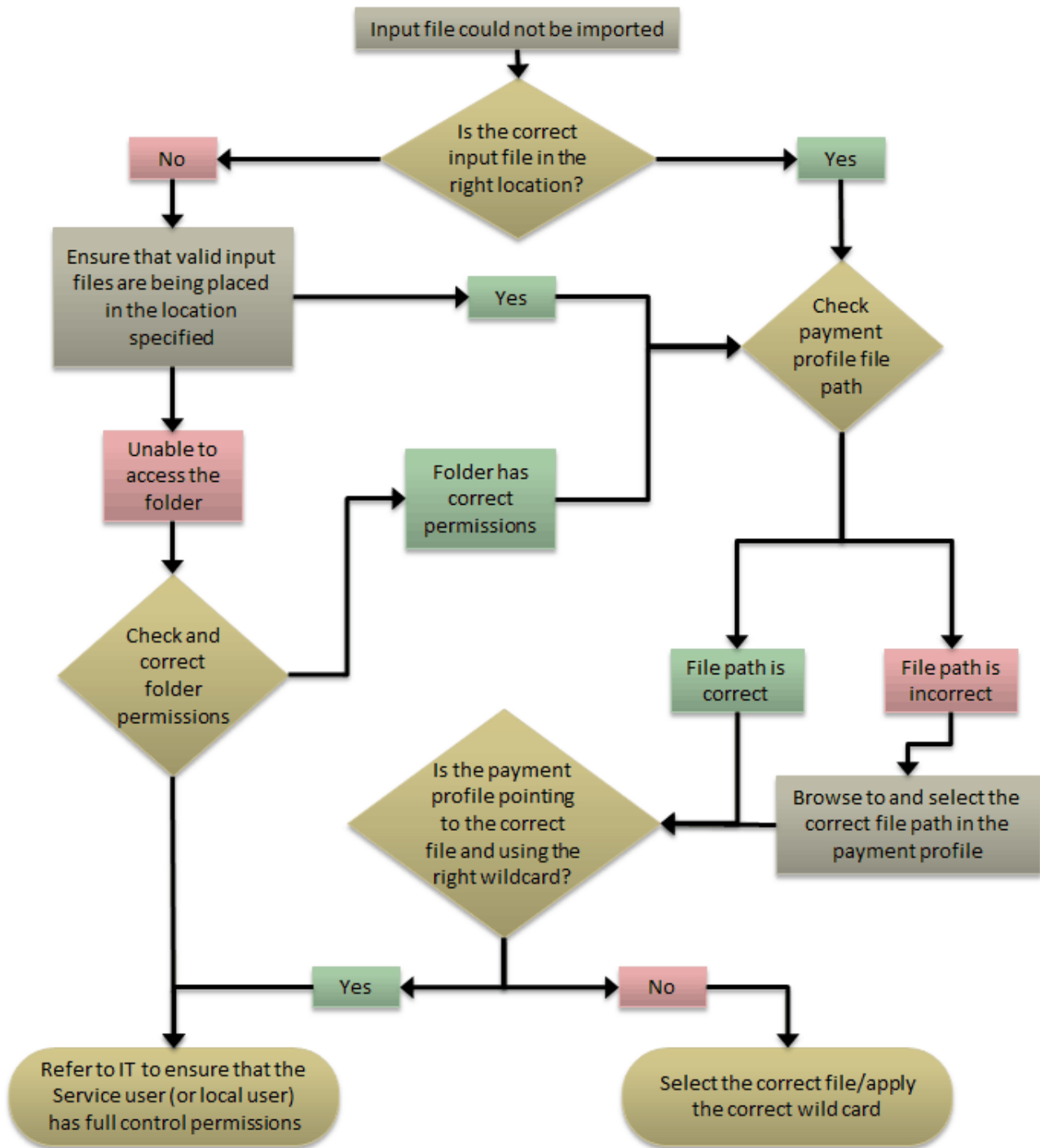


Figure 146: Unable to import input file

### 11.4.2 File Format conflict

A likely reason for an inability to import a payment input file is a conflict between the required file format and the actual layout of the input file.

You may be generating the input file from your own records, for example a spreadsheet in Excel, or from an accounts package. In either case, the file format definition file must match the input file layout.

The file format definition file is normally created by the Albany Implementations team. However, if you have changed the way you layout your spreadsheet, have changed your accounts package or

just changed the way that the input file is generated from your accounts package, it will not be possible to import the input files any longer unless the file format definition is modified to match, or the input file generation is reverted to the original layout. Full information on file format definitions is provided in paragraph 5.10.2. It is recommended that you read through all the information provided and backup your database before making any changes.

## 11.5 Profile setup

Setting up a payment profile should be conducted in a well-planned, methodical manner in order to ensure that the payments proceed smoothly. Before beginning, consider what data you will be including and how you want it to be treated. Refer to section 5.9 for a description of the procedure and to Appendix A: Payment profile processing rules. You may find it useful to print out the appendix and make relevant notes before starting. For example, are you going to archive the input files after processing? If so, where do you want to put them? Have you made provision for their storage? You will need to have a valid file format definition to match the format of the input files. This will have to be imported into ePAY (see paragraph 5.9.4) with appropriate file locations created and defined for the input file.

## 11.6 Expired certificate, Invalid or inactive smart card

If you encounter errors for an invalid smart card, this may be due to a number of problems. It is likely that you will need to contact your sponsoring bank, but before you do so, or call Albany Support, follow the diagram below as this will help to identify the issue and, if necessary, identify the organisation you need to contact to resolve the issue.

---

! You may also find it useful to read through paragraph 5.7.6 of this document.

---

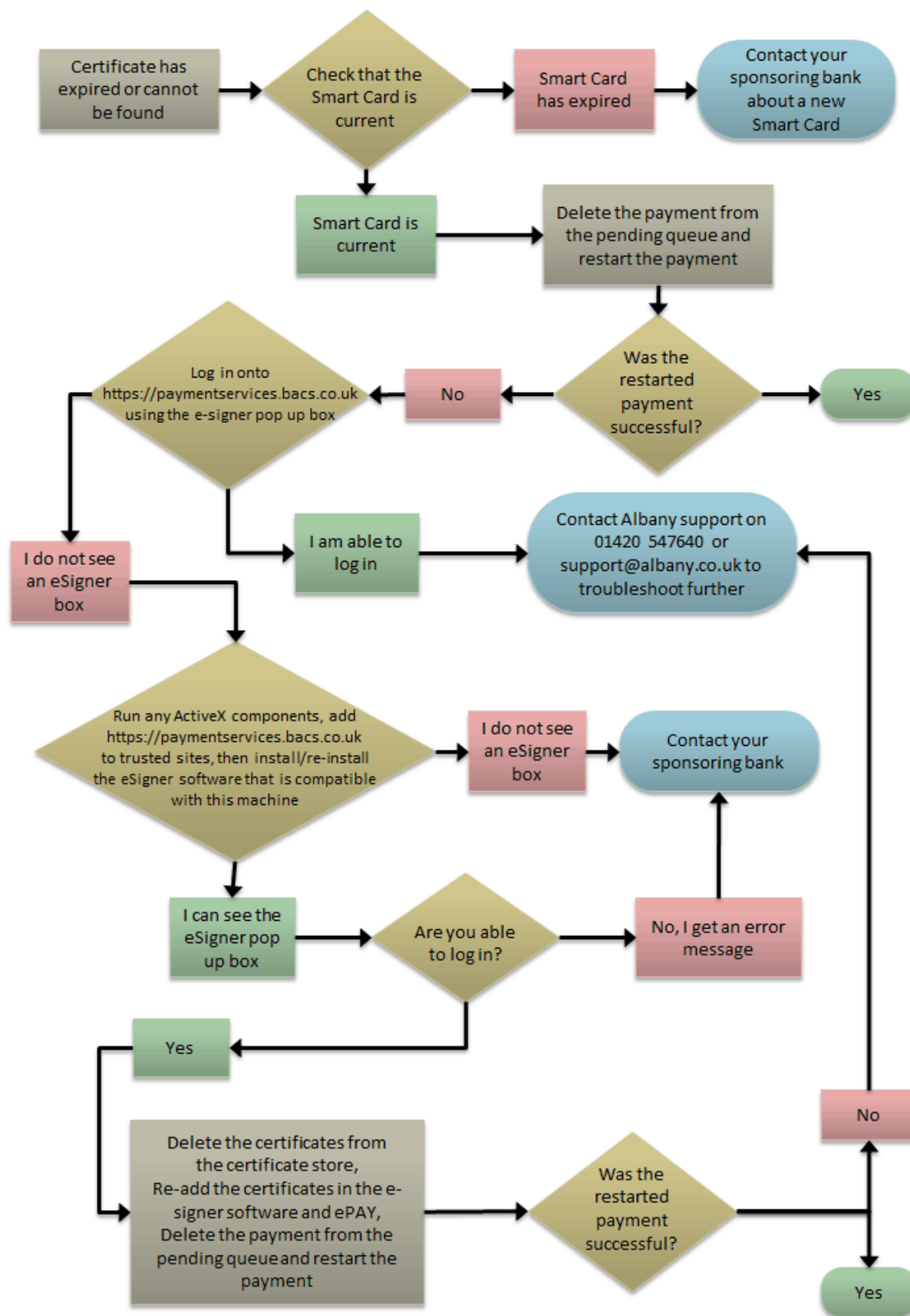


Figure 147: Bacs User Certificate expired or missing

## 11.7 Hanging on Validation

If you are experiencing a problem with validation where after the validation is almost complete but then seems to stall and not progress, there may be a simple solution. First cancel the payment.

### 11.7.1 Printer issues

Navigate to **Administration, Payment Settings, Payment Profiles**. Locate and select the payment profile where the problem is experienced. In the lower pane, switch to the **Processing Rules** tab. Click the **Advanced view** option and scroll down through the list of rules until you locate *Automatically print processing reports*. If the value is set to *Yes*, change it to *No* and save the changes.

Run the same payment profile again. If it completes validation this time without problem, it means that there is a problem with the printer that is being used to print the reports. If you want the processing reports to be printed automatically, you will need to check that all the settings for the printer are correct. Contact your IT department for assistance.

### 11.7.2 File format conflict

If the problem of validation hanging remains, cancel the payment and attempt to validate a payment using a profile that you have used before. If this works, cancel the new payment (you don't actually want to run it). It is likely that there is a problem with a conflict between the file format used and the payment profile it is connected to. Carefully check that the profile is correct. If you find a mismatch, correct it and start again. If this also fails to work, check the file format definition. Paragraph 5.10 describes file formats.

## 11.8 Unable to Send

This may be related to a Bacs response code, T700, described in Appendix E: Response messages. In this case, the indication is that there is a connection issue. Albany recommends that you check that you can log on to <https://paymentservices.bacs.co.uk> with each smart card involved in the submission. If you can establish that this is working properly, remove the existing submission from the pending queue and start again. If you cannot resolve this issue, you should contact your sponsoring bank.

## 11.9 Verify Update failure

Verification of Bank account numbers and sort codes is based on a database that is constantly updating with new and changed information. If the updating of this is not occurring as it should, your data may not be up-to-date. In Albany ePAY, the updates normally occur automatically based on a schedule. If this is failing to occur, then checks can be carried out that may correct the problem.

There can be a number of reasons for this issue, described as follows:

### 11.9.1 Connection error

Firstly, you need to check that your workstation is able to connect to the relevant servers at Albany. From the Windows Control Panel, locate and open *Internet Properties*.

Switch to the Security tab and select **Trusted sites** at the top. Now click the **Sites** button, as shown in the following illustration:

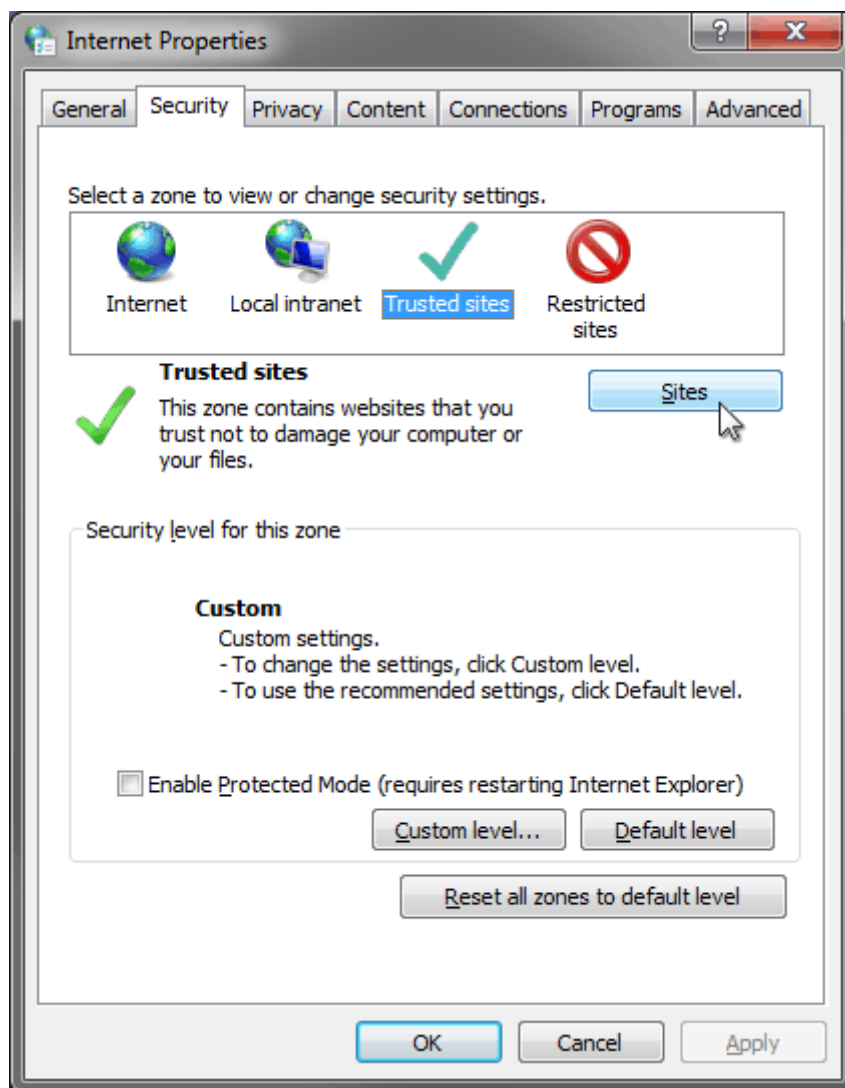


Figure 148: Trusted sites

---

! The example shown in the above illustration is from Windows 7.

---

When you click the **Sites** button, the *Trusted sites* dialog opens. In the **Add this website to the zone** box, type [https://\\*.albany.co.uk](https://*.albany.co.uk) and click the **Add** button. You will see the address added to the Websites list below. Click again in the **Add this website to the zone** box and type [https://\\*.albany.uk.net](https://*.albany.uk.net) and click the **Add** button. Click **Close** and then **OK**.

Return to Albany ePAY and check that the Verify data is now being updated correctly.

### 11.9.2 Clock synchronisation

Another likely cause for verification failure is your system clock. You set your computer clock manually as long as you are sure of the current time. It doesn't have to be precise, but should be set to the correct date and within 1 minute of Greenwich meantime (GMT). A quick way of checking is to visit the website: <http://www.thetimenow.com/>.

The quickest method for accessing your system clock is to click the clock displayed on the right of the Windows taskbar. This opens the basic settings. Depending on the version of Windows you are running, you should now be able to click a link to *Date and Time* settings dialog where you can make the necessary changes. You can also adjust the date and time via the Windows Control Panel.



Once you have set the clock more accurately on your computer, check if the Verify updates will run correctly.


### 11.9.3 Database error


If neither of the above solutions fixes the issue with Verify updates, it may be that there is an error on your database. It is unlikely that you will be able to fix this yourself, so you will need to contact Albany Support, as described in paragraph 2.2.


## Appendix A: Payment profile processing rules

This appendix provides a table of the processing rules available when creating or editing a payment profile. Refer to Appendix B: File handling for detail on how to use the file handling features.

Ruleset	Rule Name	Default Value	Description	Options
Bacs Three Day Specific	Audit record interval	0	Input reports are produced by BACS processing following the successful validation of a day section of a payment file. The default value specified by Albany ePAY is 0 which means that the input report will not include any audit records. If a number is specified other than 0, the interval at which audit records are included will be set. So a value of 5 would result in the inclusion of every 5th transaction as an audit row in the Bacs input report or a value of 100 would result in the inclusion of every 100th transaction as an audit row in the Bacs input report.	
	Date bump action	Later	Specifies how invalid dates should be handled. An invalid date is any non-working day, so at the time of writing, this is Saturdays, Sundays and all other public holidays specified in the Bacs non processing days list. <i>Later</i> is set as the default value and is probably the most appropriate. This means that the date is 'bumped' forward to the next available valid date. If you wish to <u>prevent</u> processing occurring completely in the event of an invalid date, you should set it to <i>Error</i> . If you wish to receive a warning, but continue with the payment, set it to <i>Warn</i> ; in this case, the original date will remain, but on receipt Bacs will activate its own bump actions which will move it to the next available valid date. The <i>Earlier</i> setting will choose the next available date prior to the one specified; if this is invalid, an error will be returned and the file will not be processed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Earlier</li> <li>Later</li> <li>Error</li> <li>Warn</li> </ul>
	Invalid payment date action	Next available	Describes how to handle transactions with dates prior to the next available payment date; literally, what to do if the payment is being sent too late for the specified payment date in the three day cycle.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Next available</li> <li>Error</li> </ul>
	Transaction type	From source data	Specifies the type of each transaction. If set to <i>From source data</i> the type will be read from the input file.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Credit</li> <li>Debit</li> <li>From source data</li> </ul>
Bankline Specific Rules	Invalid Date Action	Next available	Specifies how invalid dates should be handled.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Next available</li> <li>Error</li> </ul>

Ruleset	Rule Name	Default Value	Description	Options
	Output Folder	Not Used	The location to which file-based output data will be written. Click  to activate archiving and select the folder location.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Not Used</li> <li>Folder specified</li> </ul>
Faster Payment Specific Rules	Invalid date action	Move to current day	Specifies how invalid dates should be handled.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Move to current day</li> <li>Error</li> </ul>
	Transaction type	Credit	Specifies the type of each transaction. If set to <i>From source data</i> the type will be read from the input file.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Credit</li> <li>From source data</li> </ul>
General Bacs Rules	Service user number	From source data	This is the service user number for this payment profile.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From source data</li> <li>Named SUNs stored on system</li> </ul>
	Submission type	Structural test	Specifies the type of the submission. <i>Structural test</i> is designed for local internal testing; the file is not processed to Bacs. <i>Full test</i> is designed for a test that will pass to Bacs and so return errors on the Bacs system, but is marked as test and is not fully processed. <i>Live</i> is used for live payment submissions.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Structural test</li> <li>Full test</li> <li>Live</li> </ul>
General Rules	Action if account code invalid	Warn	Specifies whether transactions with invalid account codes are excluded, or allowed to continue with a warning. If set to <i>Warn</i> , this makes provision for account details that are valid, but have not yet been added to the EISCD database. This also includes account numbers and sort codes that are outside the standard format.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Warn</li> <li>Error</li> </ul>
	Action on suspected duplicated files	Warn	Specifies whether the duplicate checking criteria should prevent the transaction from proceeding, or allow it to continue with a warning. Duplicates are detected when all the following criteria are found by Albany ePAY to be the same: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Credit amounts</li> <li>Credit count</li> <li>Debit amounts</li> <li>Debit count</li> <li>SUN</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Warn</li> <li>Error</li> </ul>

Ruleset	Rule Name	Default Value	Description	Options
	Archive folder	Not used	The location to which file-based input data will be archived, if applicable. Click  to activate archiving and select the folder location. This is used if a running record is to be held of old payment files. After the payment run is made, the payment file is archived here and the location for the next payment is then ready to hold the next payment file.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Not used</li> <li>Specified location</li> </ul>
	Archive folder for void files	Not used	<p>The location to which file-based input data will be archived if the payment is voided.</p> <hr/> <p>! If/when a payment is voided then the file will either be moved from the processing directory to an archive directory (if archiving is enabled) or deleted (if archiving is not enabled). If the file is moved then it will be renamed to concatenate the payment reference number to the previous (working) file name.</p> <hr/>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Not used</li> <li>Specified location</li> </ul>
	Automatically print processing reports	No	<p>Specifies whether any of the processing reports should be automatically sent to the local default printer.</p> <hr/> <p>! It is essential, if this option is set to Yes, that the printer connection is correct. If there is a printing error, users will not be able to validate payments.</p> <hr/>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>
	Date bump report action	generate line in report	Specifies what report action should happen if an invalid date is specified in a payment file.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>generate line in report</li> <li>do not report</li> </ul>
	Delete input file	No	If set to Yes, the input file is deleted upon import. If set to No, the input file remains in the input folder.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>
	Encryption key		<p>The key used to encrypt the input data (if applicable).</p> <hr/> <p>! Encryption can be enabled if the file contains sensitive data. In this case, the encryption key needs to be provided to allow Albany ePAY to decrypt the file in order to validate the contents.</p> <hr/>	
	Encryption method	None	The method used to encrypt the input data (if any). Options at the time of writing are shown to the right. This option will match the encryption key type.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>None</li> <li>Pegasus</li> <li>RijndaelAES</li> <li>TripleDES</li> </ul>

Ruleset	Rule Name	Default Value	Description	Options
	File format		<p>The specification used to read the input data. Any file format that has been set up on your system will be listed here as a possible value.</p> <p>! If you are using an input file, you must specify a compatible File Format (see paragraph 5.9.4 concerning the setup of a File Format).</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>None</li> <li>Specified format(s) stored on your system</li> </ul>
	File name and location		<p>The name and location of the input data, if taken from a file. Wildcards (* and ?) are permitted. When the value box is active, click  to open <i>File Name Mask</i> dialog. When the profile is run it will search the specified location and the specified file and read in the data found in that file.</p> <p>! If you are using an input file, you must specify its location here.</p>	
	Invalid beneficiary name report action	do not report	Specifies what report action should happen if one or more invalid characters are found in the beneficiary name field in a payment file.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>do not report</li> <li>generate line in report</li> </ul>
	Invalid originator name report action	do not report	Specifies what report action should happen if one or more invalid characters are found in the originator name field in a payment file.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>do not report</li> <li>generate line in report</li> </ul>
	Invalid reference report action	do not report	Specifies what report action should happen if one or more invalid characters are found in the reference field in a payment file.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>do not report</li> <li>generate line in report</li> </ul>
	Originating account used	From source data	The account from which credit payments will be made and into which debit collections will be received. Any bank account that has been stored on your system can be selected.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From source data</li> <li>Specified accounts stored on your system</li> </ul>
	Payment date	Prompt	Specifies the date on which funds should arrive in the recipient's account.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From source data</li> <li>Next available</li> <li>Prompt</li> </ul>

Ruleset	Rule Name	Default Value	Description	Options
	Payment Library		The payment library used by this profile to create/complete transactions. Any library set up on your system can be selected.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>None</li> <li>Specified libraries stored on your system</li> </ul>
	Payment method used	Use default	The payment method to use (if more than one is enabled).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use default</li> <li>Prompt</li> </ul>
	Preserve contra information	No	Specifies whether to retain account and narrative information from contra records in the input data.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>
	Processing reports type	Full	Specifies the type of reports to be created as part of the validation process.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Full</li> <li>Summary</li> </ul>
	Reject entire file on transaction error	No	<p>Specifies if the entire file should be rejected if an error occurs on a transaction. If set to "no" the processing will continue, but only valid transactions are processed.</p> <p><u>! Some issues will force failure of the entire file whatever the settings, for example, a non-existing date such as 30 February.</u></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>
	Show input file name	Yes	<p>Specifies if the name and path of the input file is displayed in the status bar at the bottom of the payment wizard.</p> <p><u>! If the path is of a complex construction, such as a network path, it is unlikely that the entire path and name will fit and be visible.</u></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>
	User authorisation matrix for file values	None	<p>The group used to verify authorisation of file limits.</p> <p><u>! This functionality is currently unavailable as it is under review.</u></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>None</li> <li>Default file group</li> </ul>
	User authorisation matrix for item values	None	<p>The group used to verify authorisation of transaction limits.</p> <p><u>! This functionality is currently unavailable as it is under review.</u></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>None</li> <li>Default transaction group</li> </ul>

## Appendix B: Transaction Codes

The table below details transaction codes currently in use by Bacs. Those processed by Albany ePAY are indicated in the right hand column.

Transaction code	Transaction type	Processed by Albany ePAY
Value Items		
99	Direct Credit	Yes
99	Standing orders	
99	Automated recalls of standing orders and Direct Credits	
86	Automated settlement credits	
RA	Automated return of unapplied credits	
17	Credit contra (a debit record to balance credit records)	Yes
01 (zero 1)	Direct Debit – first collection	Yes
17	Direct Debit – regular collection	Yes
18	Direct Debit – re-presented	Yes
19	Direct Debit – final collection	Yes
U1	Automated return of unpaid Direct Debit – first collection	
U7	Automated return of unpaid Direct Debit – regular collection	
U8	Automated return of unpaid Direct Debit – re-presented	
U9	Automated return of unpaid Direct Debit – final collection	
99	Debit contra (a credit record to balance debit records)	
Z4	Interest payments	Yes
Z5	Dividend payments	Yes
07 (zero 7)	Automated teller collection	
13	Claims for unpaid cheques	
E1	Credit card debit	
E2	Credit card refund	
<b>Direct Debit Instructions (DDIs)</b>		
0N (zero N)	Direct Debit Instruction – new instruction	Yes
0C (zero C)	Direct Debit Instruction – cancellation instruction	Yes
0S (zero S)	Direct Debit Instruction – conversion instruction	Yes

## Appendix C: File handling

File handling is refined for greater security, error trapping and clarity. If you wish to use these features when creating a profile, you should read this appendix carefully in order to understand what will occur.

### Input file

The input file is automatically copied to a processing directory as soon as Albany ePAY picks it up and before it is imported (either through the scheduler, or through manual validation). The copied file is then renamed to concatenate the profile name and the current date/time with the file name, to ensure uniqueness in the processing directory.

The profile configuration setting will determine whether the original file is deleted or left in the input directory. By default, the file is not deleted.

### Post send action

If/when a payment is sent then the working file will either be:

- Moved from the processing directory to an archive directory (if archiving is enabled)
- Deleted (if archiving is not enabled)

If the file is moved then it will be renamed to concatenate the payment reference number to the previous (working) file name.

### Post void action

- If/when a payment is voided then the file will either be:
- Moved from the processing directory to an archive directory (if archiving is enabled)
- Deleted (if archiving is not enabled)

If the file is moved then it will be renamed to concatenate the payment reference number to the previous (working) file name.

### Scheduler recognition of input files in progress

The scheduler will ignore files that are in the input directory and are in progress. If the original file is not deleted, then it will be used again at the next scheduled time (but will still have duplication warnings applied).

### Ability to delete files

It is an implementation responsibility to ensure that the original file can be deleted if that option is configured (e.g. that the file is not read only and that suitable permissions exist), and that files can be moved in and out of the processing/archive directories.

### Filename displayed in status bar of wizard

The filename displayed in the status bar of the wizard will be that of the working filename, rather than the original filename.

### Processing directory location

The location of the processing directory is not user configurable; it is a folder named 'In Progress' (or similar) under the input directory. Albany ePAY will create the folder if it does not already exist.



## Input file copy failure

If it is not possible to copy the input file to the processing directory (e.g. can't create in progress folder, no disk space, insufficient permissions, etc.) then validation will fail, and a suitable file error describing the problem will be presented to the user in the wizard, and within the File Details for the voided payment. The original input file will not be deleted in this case.

Within a scheduled environment, a new payment will be created and voided each time the schedule runs, until the core issue is resolved by the user. This failure will trigger an email on error to notify them that payment has failed if notification on error is configured.

On closure of the schedule window, no additional error conditions need to be created if the file has not been successfully input during the window, as the user will have the opportunity to be advised of the previous errors during the window.

## Validation failure file treatment

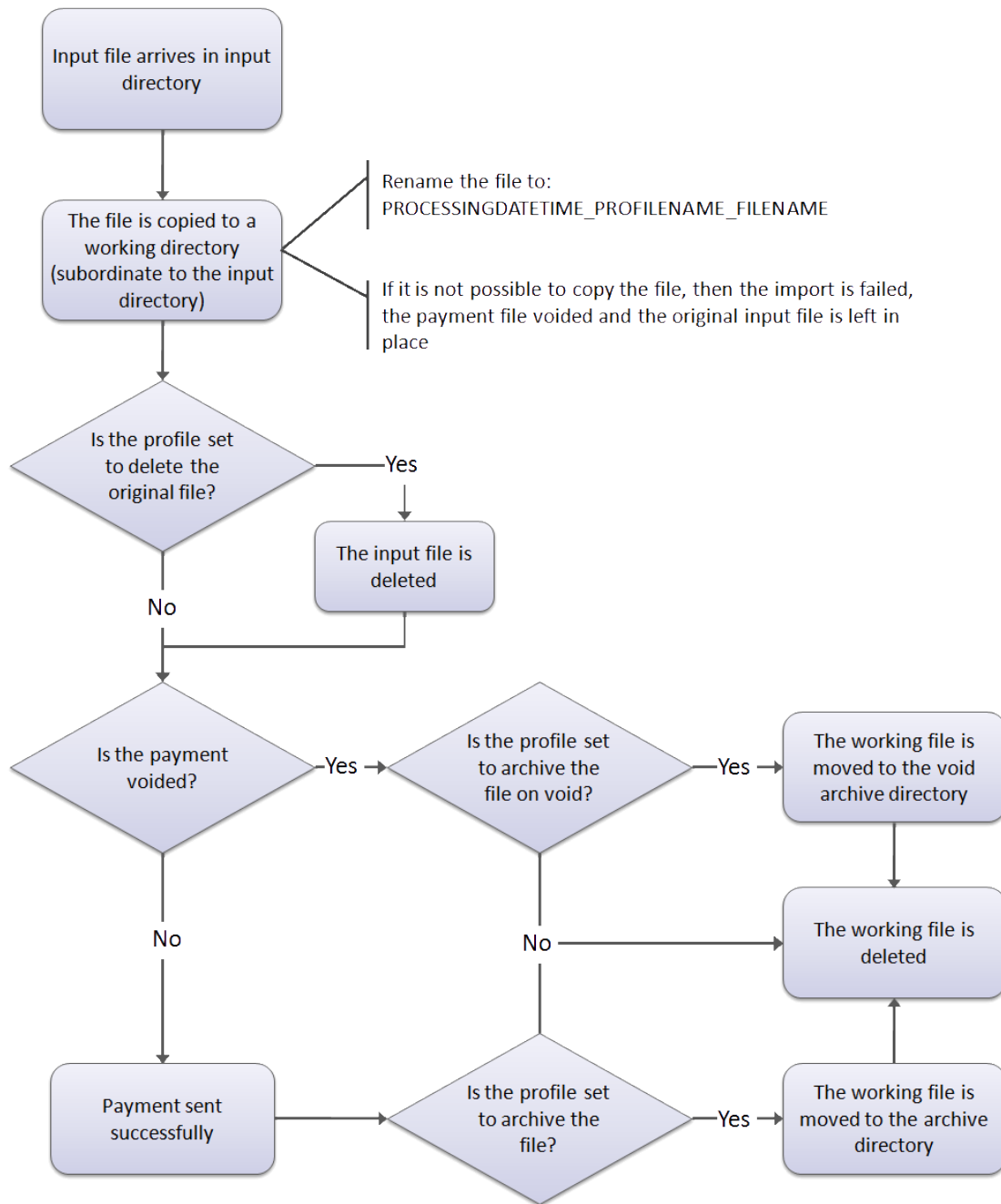
A payment that fails validation is considered voided, and therefore the working file will be moved to the voided archive directory (and renamed) should one be configured.

## Working file archiving failure

If it is not possible to move the working file to an archive directory (for example where there are file permission issues), then an error will be logged in the server log file, and the working file will remain in the processing directory.

## Inability to delete files

If it is not possible to delete the input file from the input directory or the working file from the processing directory (for example due to file permission issues), then an error will be logged in the server log file and the working file will remain in the processing directory.

**Figure 149: File handling diagram**

## Appendix D: File Format Definitions

### Definition Element

Attribute	Description	Valid Range	Default	Fixed Width	Delimited	Line Delimited
<b>Name</b>	Name of the definition. This can be used as a means of identifying the use for the payment profiles that will use it. For example, 'Company Payroll'.	Free Text, up to 255 characters		Mandatory	Mandatory	Mandatory
<b>Reference</b>	The underlying definition type. The purpose of this is to help identify the definition. For example, the name of the definition might be 'Company Payroll', but is actually based on a known format called 'Standard 18'. To assist in making this clear, the Reference attribute can specify this.	Free Text, up to 100 characters		Mandatory	Mandatory	Mandatory
<b>Description</b>	A description of the definition.	Free Text, up to 100 characters		Mandatory	Mandatory	Mandatory
<b>Type</b>	The Type specifies the structure of the input file. For example, a file with a separator such as a comma between each field is referred to as a delimited file. A file that has no separators but has a regular line length (such as a Standard 18 format) is referred to as a FixedWidth file. Occasionally files are used that have lines that appear to be fixed but each line is a lightly different length with a carriage return or line feed to indicate the end of the line. This last type is referred to as LineDelimited.	Select from: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FixedWidth</li> <li>Delimited</li> <li>LineDelimited</li> </ul>		Mandatory	Mandatory	Mandatory
<b>Separator</b>	The column separator in a delimited file (see Type, above).	Single character		Disabled	Mandatory	Disabled

### Line Element

A line may not be defined as having both IsContra and IsTransaction attributes being true. If the input file is a multi-file submission the header row would be defined as only having IsStart set to true, this will ensure that each submission within the file would start a new batch.

If an input file contains both contra and transaction entries the definition of the contra line should always be specified before the definition of the transaction line.

Attribute	Description	Valid Range	Default	Fixed Width	Delimited	Line Delimited
Length	Length of the line.	Numeric, up to 9999 numbers		Mandatory	Not present	Not present
IsContra	Indicates that this line definition is for contra entries.	True/False	False	Mandatory	Mandatory	Mandatory
IsStart	Indicates that this line begins the block of data to be read, for fixed-width files only.	True/False	False	Mandatory	Not present	Mandatory
IsTransaction	Indicates that this line definition is a transaction entry.	True/False	False	Mandatory	Mandatory	Mandatory

## Field Element

Attribute	Description	Valid Range	Fixed Width	Delimited	Line Delimited
-----------	-------------	-------------	-------------	-----------	----------------

Attribute	Description	Valid Range	Fixed Width	Delimited	Line Delimited
Start	The starting position of the field within the line.	Numeric, up to 9999 numbers	Mandatory	Not present	Mandatory
Length	The length of the field.	Numeric, up to 9999 numbers	Mandatory	Not present	Conditionally Mandatory <sup>4</sup>
Name	The name of the field. A list of the fields currently recognised by Albany ePAY is provided on page 171. Other fields can be used and included for reference, but Albany ePAY is not programmed to do anything with the data.	Select from the Known Fields (listed on page 171) or enter free text (max 100)	Conditionally mandatory <sup>5</sup>	Optional	Conditionally mandatory <sup>5</sup>
Value	A literal used to detect a specific type of line.	Free Text, up to 100 characters	Conditionally mandatory <sup>5</sup>	Optional	Conditionally mandatory <sup>5</sup>
Mask	The data type that can be used in the field.	Select from: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Numeric</li> <li>AlphaNumeric</li> </ul>	Mandatory	Not present	Mandatory
Format	This is used to interpret the data for this field, normally numerical values.	Free Text, up to 50 characters	Optional	Optional	Optional
IsLast	Indicates that this field is the last on the line.	True/False	Not Used	Not present	Mandatory

<sup>4</sup> This field must always be completed (and will default to 0) but if the IsLast field is set to true then it is ignored.

<sup>5</sup> Although the field Name and Value attributes are both optional, one of them must be specified for each field. If a field has both attributes specified the Name is ignored.

## Known Fields

The field name attribute is used to identify the data segment. If a known name is used for a field it will be mapped to the relevant field on the transaction, if an unknown name is used it will also be stored. Below are the known field names.

Field name	Default mask
Amount	Numeric
Currency	Numeric
DestinationAccountName	AlphaNumeric
DestinationAccountNumber	Numeric
DestinationAccountSortCode	Numeric
FileProcessingDate	AlphaNumeric
FreeFormat	AlphaNumeric
OriginatingAccountSortCode	Numeric
OriginatingAccountNumber	Numeric
OriginatingAccountName	AlphaNumeric
ProcessingDate	AlphaNumeric
OriginalProcessingDay	Numeric
Reference	AlphaNumeric
RejectionReason	AlphaNumeric
TransactionCode	AlphaNumeric
UserAccountName	AlphaNumeric
UserAccountNumber	Numeric
UserAccountType	AlphaNumeric
UserNarrative	AlphaNumeric
UserSortCode	Numeric

## Default mask

The Mask attribute uses the characters shown in the following table to specify the type of data held at that position; the mask must be as long as the length attribute. Any other character is taken as a literal, so for example NN-NN-NN could be used to identify a sort code. Note that the format is case sensitive with regards to the characters included:

Character	Represents
A	Any character
N	Any single number (i.e. 0-9)
C	Any alphabetic character (i.e. A-z)

## Appendix E: Response messages

In the event of an error, there are a number of messages that may be generated, depending on the issue. There are various categories of response messages. If you know the category you can locate it in the contents list and look for the message. However, if you are unsure of the category or merely wish to search quickly for the response message number, use the search facility in this help.

---

! If you encounter any of the errors shown, it is likely that there is a security issue with the user or a fault in the input file. The best solution in any situation is to check both facts carefully. Ensure that all the data supplied in the input file is correctly formatted in accordance with the file format and that the data is valid. Common errors are rejected by Bacs because the data is invalid, such as letters included in a bank account number.

---

The information supplied in this section should help you in understanding when there are issues and will assist you in providing information about the error to system support.

### Contra processing day response codes

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1982	Bacs	Warning – A processing day will be overridden by Bacs	There is an error in the structure of your submission (a processing day in a contra record is not in the correct format).	The contra record will be processed on the same processing day of the payment file (the UHL1 date). If you have any concerns, please contact your sponsor.
1983	Bacs	Warning – A processing day will be overridden by Bacs	The processing day of a contra record is not a valid Bacs processing day.	The affected contra record will be processed on the nearest valid processing day to the day you used. If you have any concerns, please contact your sponsor.
1984	Bacs	Warning – A European non-processing day has been used	The processing day of a contra record is a European non-processing day.	Settlement for this record will occur on the next available day. If you have concerns, please contact your sponsor.
1985	Bacs	Warning – A processing day will be overridden by Bacs	The processing day of a contra record is more than 39 calendar days after the processing day of the payment file (in UHL1).	The affected contra record will be processed on the same processing day of the payment file (the UHL1 date). If you have concerns, please contact your sponsor.
1986	Bacs	Warning – A processing day will be overridden by Bacs	The processing day of a contra record has already passed.	The affected contra will be processed on the same processing day of the payment file (the UHL1 date). If you have concerns, please contact your sponsor.

### XML file header response codes

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
------	---------	---------	---------	--------

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1201	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. A valid XML payment file header did not follow a VOL1 record.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1201	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. A valid XML payment file header did not follow a VOL1 record.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1202	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. This was a multifile submission and a valid XML payment file header did not follow the UTL1 record.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1202	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. This was a multifile submission and a valid XML payment file header did not follow the UTL1 record.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1203	Bacs	Your payment file has been rejected	There has been an error in the validation of the signature of the payment file. The signature was invalid.	Please try re-signing and retransmitting the payment file and retransmit the payment file. If this problem persists please contact your solution supplier.
1203	FPS	Your payment file has been rejected	There has been an error in the validation of the signature of the payment file. The signature was invalid.	Please try re-signing and retransmitting the payment file. If this problem persists please contact your solution supplier.
1204	Bacs	Your payment file has been rejected	You are required to sign individual payment files, however, your payment file was not signed.	Please try retransmitting the payment file. Please note one of the following: (i) If you are signing the payment file and the problem persists, please contact your solution supplier; or: (ii) If you believe you do not require a payment file level signature, please contact your sponsor to discuss.
1204	FPS	Your payment file has been rejected	You are required to sign individual payment files, however, your payment file was not signed.	Please try retransmitting the payment file. Please note one of the following: (i) If you are signing the payment file and the problem persists, please contact your solution supplier; or: (ii) If you believe you do not require a payment file level signature, please contact your sponsor to discuss.
1205	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The XML payment file header was invalid.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1205	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The XML payment file header was invalid.	Please contact your solution supplier.



Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1206	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The XML payment file header sequence number was not numbered consecutively.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1206	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The XML payment file header sequence number was not numbered consecutively.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1211	Bacs	Your payment file has been rejected	The payment file has been signed by a contact who is not recognised by Bacs.	Please ensure the payment file is signed by a recognised contact. If this problem persists, please contact your sponsor to discuss your profile for Bacs Payment Services.
1211	FPS	Your payment file has been rejected	The payment file has been signed by a contact who is not recognised by FPS.	Please ensure the payment file is signed by a recognised contact. If this problem persists, please contact your sponsor to discuss your profile for Faster Payment Services.
1212	Bacs	Your payment file has been rejected	The payment file has been signed by a contact who is not associated with the originating service user.	Please ensure the payment file is signed by an associated contact. If this problem persists, please contact your sponsor to discuss your profile for Bacs Payment Services.
1212	FPS	Your payment file has been rejected	The payment file has been signed by a contact who is not associated with the originating Corporate.	Please ensure the payment file is signed by an associated contact. If this problem persists, please contact your sponsor to discuss your profile for Faster Payment Services.
1213	Bacs	Your payment file has been rejected	The file has been signed by a contact that is not active on BACSTEL-IP.	Please ensure the file is signed by an active contact. If you have any concerns, please contact your sponsor to discuss your profile for Bacs Payment Services
1213	FPS	Your payment file has been rejected	The file has been signed by a contact that is not active on Secure-IP.	Please ensure the file is signed by an active contact. If you have any concerns, please contact your sponsor to discuss your profile for Faster Payment Services
1214	Bacs	Your payment file has been rejected	The file has been signed by a contact that does not have signing privileges.	Please ensure the file is signed by a contact that has signing privileges. If you have any concerns, please contact your sponsor to discuss your profile for Bacs Payment Services.
1214	FPS	Your payment file has been rejected	The file has been signed by a contact that does not have signing privileges.	Please ensure the file is signed by an active contact. If you have any concerns, please contact your sponsor to discuss your profile for Faster Payment Services

## Contra response codes

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1991	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the account details of a contra record. A destination sorting code was not all numeric.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
1991	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the account details of a contra record. A destination sorting code was not all numeric.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier
1992	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the account details of a contra record. A destination account number was not all numeric.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
1992	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the account details of a contra record. A destination account number was not all numeric.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
1993	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the account details of a contra record. A destination account code type was not all numeric.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
1993	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the account details of a contra record. A destination account code type was not all numeric.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
1994	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the account details of a contra record. An originating sorting code was not all numeric.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
1994	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the account details of a contra record. An originating sorting code was not all numeric.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
1995	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the account details of a contra record. An originating account number was not all numeric.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
1995	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the account details of a contra record. An originating account number was not all numeric.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
1996	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	You have submitted a contra record with a zero value.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1996	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	You have submitted a contra record with a zero value.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
1997	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the value of a contra record. The value was not all numeric.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
1997	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the value of a contra record. The value was not all numeric.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
2018	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	All contras in a given file must relate to same account.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.

## Credit card specific response codes

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1939	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in a credit card record. The merchant number was not all numeric.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
1940	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in a credit card record. The merchant number is all zeroes.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
1941	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in a credit card record. The cardholder number was not numeric followed by spaces.	Please check the cardholder number used was numeric. If it was all numeric, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
1942	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the account details of an unapplied automated credit record. An originating account number was zero filled.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your Submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.

## Currency code response codes

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1551	Bacs	For information	The payment file submitted is in Euros.	No action required.
1552	Bacs	A currency used has not been recognised	The currency of a payment file submitted was not recognised.	It will be processed as sterling. If you have any concerns, please contact your sponsor.
2014	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	The currency of a payment file submitted was not recognised. It must be sterling (00).	Please contact your solution supplier.

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
2024	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	Euro payments not allowed.	Please contact your solution supplier.

## EOF1 record response codes

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1601	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. A valid payment instruction or EOF1 record does not follow a payment record.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1601	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. A valid payment instruction or EOF1 record does not follow a payment record.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1602	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The characters in positions 6 to 11 of EOF1 are not all numeric.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1602	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The characters in positions 6 to 11 of EOF1 are not all numeric.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1603	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. A valid standing order recall record or EOF1 record does not follow a standing order recall record.	Please contact your solution supplier.

## EOF2 record response codes

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1701	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. A valid EOF2 record does not follow the EOF1 record.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1701	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. A valid EOF2 record does not follow the EOF1 record.	Please contact your solution supplier.

## HDR1 record response codes

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1301	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. A valid HDR1 record did not follow an XML payment file header in your submission.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1301	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. A valid HDR1 record did not follow an XML payment file header in your submission.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1302	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your single file submission. The service user number in the VOL1 record of your submission was not the same as the service user number your software included in the HDR1 record.	Please contact your solution supplier.

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1302	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your single file submission. The service user number in the VOL1 record of your submission was not the same as the service user number your software included in the HDR1 record.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1303	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The file identifier in the HDR1 record was not equal to the file identifier in the XML payment file header.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1303	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The file identifier in the HDR1 record was not equal to the file identifier in the XML payment file header.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1304	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The service user number in the HDR1 record was invalid.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1304	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The service user number in the HDR1 record was invalid.	Please contact your solution supplier.

## HDR2 record response codes

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1401	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. A valid HDR2 record did not follow a HDR1 record.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1401	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. A valid HDR2 record did not follow a HDR1 record.	Please contact your solution supplier.

## Logon and submission response codes

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1001	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	The last request/slice that Bacs received was not the one expected.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1002	Bacs	Your payment file has been rejected	There is no valid relationship between the bureau submitting the payment file and the payment originator.	Please contact your sponsor to discuss your profile for Bacs Payment Services.
1002	FPS	Your payment file has been rejected	There is no valid relationship between the bureau submitting the payment file and the payment originator and the file is not signed.	Please contact your sponsor.
1004	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	You have attempted to transmit a submission with the same "submission serial number" as another submission for the same service user number and processing day that has already been accepted by Bacs	Please ensure you have not already transmitted this submission to Bacs on the current processing day. If you have not, please amend the submission serial number in the VOL1 and retransmit the submission. If you require assistance, please contact your solution supplier.

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1004	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	You have attempted to transmit a submission with the same "submission serial number" as another submission for the same SUN and processing day that has already been accepted by FPS.	Please ensure you have not already transmitted this submission to FPS on the current processing day. If you have not, please amend the submission serial number in the VOL1 and retransmit the submission. If you require assistance, please contact your solution supplier.
1005	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	The security checks at BACS have identified that the "r;signature hash" for the submission is invalid.	Please re-validate and then re-sign the submission and retransmit from the start submission request. If this problem persists please contact your solution supplier.
1005	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	The security checks at FPS have identified that the "r;signature hash" for the submission is invalid.	Please re-validate and then re-sign the submission and retransmit from the start submission request. If this problem persists please contact your solution supplier.
1009	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	Your software has transmitted a slice of an incorrect size.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1009	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	Your software has transmitted a slice of an incorrect size.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1011	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	Bacs has received a different number of slices to the number expected based on information provided by your software (in the XML submission header).	Please contact your solution supplier.
1012	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	Your session with Bacs Payment Services has timed out.	If you wish to continue using BACS Payment Services please re-authenticate and restart the submission.
1012	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	Your session with Bacs Payment Services has timed out.	If you wish to continue using Faster Payment Services please re-authenticate and restart the submission.
1013	Bacs	Your submission has been aborted	Your submission has been aborted at your request	No action required.
1013	FPS	Your submission has been aborted	Your submission has been aborted at your request	No action required.
1014	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	A Bacs operator has terminated your submission.	Please contact Bacs.
1014	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	A Bacs operator has terminated your submission.	Please contact FPS.
1015	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	This submission was not completed before another one was started.	No action required.
1015	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	This submission was not completed before another one was started.	No action required.

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1016	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	A technical error has occurred at Bacs.	Please try retransmitting the submission. If the problem persists, please contact Bacs.
1016	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	A technical error has occurred at FPS.	Please try retransmitting the submission. If the problem persists, please contact FPS.
1021	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	You have submitted a multifile submission, however, as you are not a bureau service user this is not permitted.	The payment files should be sent in separate submissions. If you have any concerns, please contact your sponsor to discuss your profile for Bacs Payment Services.
1023	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	You are submitting on behalf of a service user to whom you are not linked.	Please ensure the submission is sent by a contact associated with the service user. If the problem persists, please contact your sponsor to discuss your profile for Bacs Payment Services.
1023	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	You are submitting on behalf of a Corporate to whom you are not linked.	Please ensure the submission is sent by a contact associated with the Corporate. If the problem persists, please contact your sponsor to discuss your profile for Faster Payment Services
1024	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	You do not have the correct permissions to submit files.	Please ensure the submission is sent by a contact who has the correct permissions. If you have any concerns, please contact your sponsor to discuss your profile for Bacs Payment Services.
1024	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	You do not have the correct permissions to submit files.	Please ensure the submission is sent by a contact who has the correct permissions. If you have any concerns, please contact your sponsor to discuss your profile for Faster Payment Services.
1025	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	The submission has been signed by a contact who is not recognised by Bacs.	Please ensure the submission is signed by a recognised contact. If you have any concerns, please contact your sponsor to discuss your profile for Bacs Payment Services.
1025	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	The submission has been signed by a contact who is not recognised by FPS.	Please ensure the submission is signed by a recognised contact. If you have any concerns, please contact your sponsor to discuss your profile for Faster Payment Services.
1026	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	The submission has been signed by a contact who is not associated with the service user.	Please ensure the submission is signed by an associated contact. If you have any concerns, please contact your sponsor to discuss your profile for Bacs Payment Services.
1026	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	The submission has been signed by a contact who is not associated with the Corporate.	Please ensure the submission is signed by an associated contact. If you have any concerns, please contact your sponsor to discuss your profile for Faster Payment Services.

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1027	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	The signature on your submission cannot be read.	Please re-sign the submission and retransmit. If this problem persists, please contact your solution supplier.
1028	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	The submission has been signed by a contact that is not active on BACSTEL-IP.	Please ensure the submission is signed by an active contact. If you have any concerns, please contact your sponsor to discuss your profile for Bacs Payment Services.
1028	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	The submission has been signed by a contact that is not active on Secure-IP.	Please ensure the submission is signed by an active contact. If you have any concerns, please contact your sponsor to discuss your profile for Faster Payment Services.
1029	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	The submission has been signed by a contact that does not have signing privileges.	Please ensure the submission is signed by a contact that has signing privileges. If you have any concerns, please contact your sponsor to discuss your profile for Bacs Payment Services.
1029	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	The submission has been signed by a contact that does not have signing privileges.	Please ensure the submission is signed by a contact that has signing privileges. If you have any concerns, please contact your sponsor to discuss your profile for Faster Payment Services.
1031	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	Bacs does not recognise your submitting software.	Please contact your solution supplier to ensure the package has been registered and approved by Bacs.
1031	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	Bacs does not recognise your submitting software.	Please contact your solution supplier to ensure the package has been registered and approved by FPS.
1032	Bacs	Your logon has been rejected	Your submitting software has not been approved by Bacs.	Please contact your solution supplier to ensure the package has been approved by Bacs.
1032	FPS	Your logon has been rejected	Your submitting software has not been approved by FPS.	Please contact your solution supplier to ensure the package has been approved by FPS.
1033	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	Your submitting software is not linked to the submitting service user.	Please contact your sponsor to ensure the software has been properly associated with the service user or use a package that has been.
1033	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	Your submitting software is not linked to the submitting Corporate.	Please contact your sponsor to ensure the software has been properly associated with the Corporate or use a package that has been.
1034	Bacs	Your logon has been rejected	The submitting software has not supplied a software package identifier in the logon request.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1034	FPS	Your logon has been rejected	The submitting software has not supplied a software package identifier in the logon request.	Please contact your solution supplier.



Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1035	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	The solution supplier associated with the submitting software is not linked to the service user you are submitting with, where the service user is designated as a Supplier Tester service user.	Please contact your sponsor.
1039	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	The submitting service user is not allowed to submit live submissions using this package.	Please contact your sponsor.
1039	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	The submitting Corporate is not allowed to submit live submissions using this package.	Please contact your sponsor.
1040	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	The submitting service user is designated as a Supplier Tester service user, and as such cannot submit live submissions.	Please submit using a normal service user.
1050	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The transmitted data does not consist of a complete submission.	Please try retransmitting your Submission. Please contact your solution supplier.
1050	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The transmitted data does not consist of a complete submission.	Please try retransmitting your Submission. Please contact your solution supplier.
1911	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	You have submitted a payment file that exceeds the allowed number of payment instructions (1.2 million).	Please resubmit the payment instructions in smaller payment files.
1911	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	You have submitted a payment file that exceeds the allowed number of payment instructions (1.2 million).	Please resubmit the payment instructions in smaller payment files.
2004	FPS	Your payment file has been rejected	Any duplicate File with the following combinations is not permitted. submission date (YYYYMMDD) which corresponds to earliest processing date in start submission XML header SUN of file originator. Specified as field 6-11 in HDR1 file number. This is file number defined in UHL1. Field 38-40.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
2019	FPS	Your payment file has been rejected	The Multi File Flag in the start submission request is set to "N" for a multifile submission.	Please contact your solution supplier as a multifile submission should have the Multi file flag set to "Y".

## Multi-processing day response codes

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1912	Bacs	Warning – A processing day will be overridden by Bacs	There is an error in the structure of your submission (a processing day in a payment instruction was not in the correct format).	The affected payment instruction will be processed on the processing day of the payment file (the UHL1 date). If you have any concerns, please contact your sponsor.
1913	Bacs	Warning – A processing day will be overridden by Bacs	The processing date of a payment instruction is invalid.	The payment instruction will be processed on the next valid processing date after the date supplied. If this falls outside the valid processing date range the payment instruction will be processed on the latest valid processing date within the range. If you have any concerns, please contact your sponsor.
1914	Bacs	Warning – A European non-processing day has been used	The processing day of a payment instruction is a European non-processing day.	Settlement for this record will occur on the next available day. If you have concerns, please contact your sponsor.
1915	Bacs	Warning – A processing day will be overridden by Bacs	The processing day of a payment instruction is more than 39 calendar days after the processing day of the payment file (in UHL1).	The affected payment instruction will be processed on the processing day of the payment file (the UHL1 date). If you have concerns, please contact your sponsor.
1916	Bacs	Warning – A processing day will be overridden by Bacs	The processing day of a payment instruction has already passed.	The affected payment instruction will be processed on the processing day of the payment file (the UHL1 date). If you have any concerns, please contact your sponsor.
1917	Bacs	Warning – A processing day will be overridden by Bacs	The processing day of a Direct Debit Instruction is not the current processing day or is invalid.	The DDI will be processed on the current working day. If you have any concerns, please contact your sponsor.

## Payment item structure response codes

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1901	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. A payment instruction in the submission contained an unrecognised transaction code.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1901	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. A payment instruction in the submission contained an unrecognised transaction code.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1902	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. A valid contra record has not been included for a particular day section or file.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1902	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. A valid contra record has not been included for a particular day section or file.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1905	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. No valid payment instructions were included for a particular day section or file.	Please contact your solution supplier.

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1905	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. No valid payment instructions were included for a particular day section or file.	Please contact your solution supplier.

## Processing day response codes

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1502	Bacs	Warning – A processing day in your submission will be overridden by Bacs.	There is an error in the structure of your submission (the UHL1 processing day was not in the correct format).	The file will be processed on the current processing day. If you have any concerns, please contact your sponsor.
1502	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission (the UHL1 processing day was not in the correct format).	Please contact your solution supplier.
1503	Bacs	Warning – A processing day in your submission will be overridden by Bacs.	The processing day of your payment file is invalid (the processing date was supplied in UHL1).	If the payment file is a single processing day file it will be processed on the next available processing date after the date supplied in your payment file. If this falls outside the valid processing date range, your payment file will be processed on the latest available processing date within the range. If the payment file is a multiprocessing day file it will be processed on the current Bacs processing date. If you have any concerns, please contact your sponsor.
1504	Bacs	Warning – A European non-processing day has been used.	The processing day included in the submission is a European non-processing day.	Settlement for this record will occur on the next available day (the processing day was supplied in the UHL1 record). If you have any concerns, please contact your sponsor.
1506	Bacs	Warning – A processing day in your submission will be overridden by Bacs.	The processing day in your submission has already passed.	The submission will be processed on the current processing day (the processing day was supplied in the UHL1 record). If you have any concerns, please contact your sponsor.
1507	Bacs	Warning – A processing day in your submission will be overridden by Bacs.	The processing day in your submission was not the current processing day. This is required for the file type submitted.	The submission will be processed on the current processing day (the processing day was supplied in the UHL1 record). If you have any concerns, please contact your sponsor.
1508	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission (the work code in UHL1 was not a valid work code).	Please contact your solution supplier.

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1508	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission (the work code in UHL1 was not a valid work code).	Please contact your solution supplier.
1509	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission (the file number in UHL1 must be numeric).	Please contact your solution supplier.
1509	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission (the file number in UHL1 must be numeric).	Please contact your solution supplier.
2013	FPS	Your payment file has been rejected	The processing day in your submission file is not valid. It should be same as earliest processing date defined in the start submission header (the processing day was supplied in the UHL1 record). The Submission file is rejected.	Please contact your solution supplier.

## Standard debit and credit response codes

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1931	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the account details of a payment instruction. A destination sorting code was not all numeric.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
1931	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the account details of a payment instruction. A destination sorting code was not all numeric.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
1932	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the account details of a payment instruction. A destination account number was not all numeric.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
1932	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the account details of a payment instruction. A destination account number was not all numeric.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
1933	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the account details of a payment instruction. A destination account code type was not all numeric.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1933	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the account details of a payment instruction. A destination account code type was not all numeric.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
1934	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the account details of a payment instruction. An originating sorting code was not all numeric.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
1934	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the account details of a payment instruction. An originating sorting code was not all numeric.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
1935	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the account details of a payment instruction. An originating account number used was not all numeric.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
1935	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the account details of a payment instruction. An originating account number used was not all numeric.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
1936	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	You have submitted a payment instruction with a zero value.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
1936	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	You have submitted a payment instruction with a zero value.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
1937	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the value of a payment instruction. The value was not all numeric.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
1937	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the value of a payment instruction. The value was not all numeric.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
1938	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the account details of a Direct Debit instruction. A destination account number used was all zeroes.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
2000	FPS	Your payment file has been rejected	There is an error in the value of standard credit record. Originating sort code should be same for all records in file.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
2001	FPS	Your payment file has been rejected	There is an error in the value of standard credit record. Originating Account number should be same for all records in file.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.
2020	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your payment instruction (invalid character is used in Users Reference).	Please contact your solution supplier.
2021	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your payment instruction. (invalid character is used in Destination Account Name).	Please contact your solution supplier.
2022	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the value of numeric reference. The value was not all numeric.	Please check the details used. If correct details were used, there may be an error in the structure of your submission, in which case, contact your solution supplier.

## Transport response codes

The following includes the possible response codes contained in the XML element response code and the descriptions that should be used. In addition to the transport layer response codes, the HTTP error code mechanism will also be used. The mapping between the transport layer response codes and their HTTP counterparts are also described in the table.

### Information codes

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
T100	Bacs	Your request/slice has been successfully transmitted	A single slice/request has been successfully processed, and Bacs is ready to receive the next request/slice.	The transmission can continue.
T100	FPS	Your request/slice has been successfully transmitted	A single slice/request has been successfully processed, and FPS is ready to receive the next request/slice.	The transmission can continue.
T200	Bacs	Your submission has been transmitted successfully	Your submission has been transmitted successfully and all payment files that have been accepted will be passed on for full validation processing at Bacs. Warnings may have been issued. Please see the application warning code or codes for more information.	No action required.
T200	FPS	Your submission has been transmitted successfully	Your submission has been transmitted successfully and all payment files that have been accepted will be passed on for full validation processing at FPS. Warnings may have been issued. Please see the application warning code or codes for more information.	No action required.
T300	Bacs	You can start your submission	Your request to start a new submission has been successful.	The submission can continue.
T300	FPS	You can start your submission	Your request to start a new submission has been successful.	The submission can continue.

**Error codes**

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action	Severity
T310	Bacs	The live submission service is unavailable.	The live submission window is closed therefore you cannot transmit live submissions at this time.	Please try again when the live submission window is open. For details of the opening times, please see the Bacs Payment Services web site.	No submission can be entered at this time.
T310	FPS	The submission service is unavailable.	The submission window is closed therefore you cannot transmit submissions at this time.	Please try again when the submission window is open. For details of the opening times, please see the FPS Payment Services web site.	No submission can be entered at this time.
T311	Bacs	The test submission service is unavailable.	The test submission window is closed therefore you cannot transmit live submissions at this time.	Please try again when the test submission window is open. For details of the opening times, please see the Bacs Payment Services web site.	No test submission can be entered at this time.
T320	Bacs	BACS Payment Services are unavailable.	The Bacs Payment Services window is closed therefore you cannot transmit submissions or retrieve reports at this time.	Please try again when the live submission window is open. For details of the opening times, please see the Bacs Payment Services web site.	Cannot use BACSTEL-IP.
T320	FPS	FPS Payment Services are unavailable.	The FPS Payment Services window is closed therefore you cannot transmit submissions or retrieve reports at this time.	Please try again when the submission window is open. For details of the opening times, please see the FPS Payment Services web site.	Secure-IP Unavailable.
T400	Bacs	There has been a technical error with your Supplier's Bacs Approved Software.	The last request/slice that Bacs has received was not the one expected.	Please contact your supplier.	Non-fatal for a configurable number of attempts.
T400	FPS	There has been a technical error with your Supplier's FPS Approved Software.	The last request/slice that FPS has received was not the one expected.	Please contact your supplier.	Non-fatal for a configurable number of attempts.
T410	Bacs	Your submission has been terminated.	The slice that your software sent is larger than the maximum slice size provided in the start submission request.	Please contact your supplier.	Fatal
T500	Bacs	There has been a technical error with your Supplier's Bacs Approved Software	The request that your software has sent contains an invalid header.	Please contact your supplier.	Non-fatal for a configurable number of attempts.

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action	Severity
T500	FPS	There has been a technical error with your Supplier's FPS Approved Software	The request that your software has sent contains an invalid header.	Please contact your supplier.	Non-fatal for a configurable number of attempts.
T510	Bacs	Your submission has been terminated	The submission type was not valid.	Please restart your submission and if the problem persists please contact your supplier.	Fatal
T510	FPS	Your submission has been terminated	The submission type was not valid.	Please restart your submission and if the problem persists please contact your supplier.	Fatal
T520	Bacs	Your submission cannot be started	Your Service User Number is not recognised by Bacs.	Please check the Service User Number used. If it is correct, contact your sponsor.	Fatal
T520	FPS	Your submission cannot be started	Your Service User Number is not recognised by FPS.	Please check the SUN used. If it is correct, contact your sponsor.	Fatal
T530	FPS	Your submission has been terminated.	The submission date in the XML header is outside the permitted range.	Please check the date used for your submission.	Fatal
T600	Bacs	Your submission has not been recognised by Bacs	This may be due to either: a connection failure e.g. Bacs may not have been expecting a submission from you, or an error with your Supplier's Bacs Approved Software, e.g. the "submission identifier" which your Bacs Approved Software included within the "request header" was not the one expected by Bacs.	Please restart your submission, and if the problem persists please contact your supplier.	Non-fatal for a configurable number of attempts.
T600	FPS	Your submission has not been recognised by FPS	This may be due to either: a connection failure e.g. FPS may not have been expecting a submission from you, or an error with your Supplier's FPS Approved Software, e.g. the "submission identifier" which your FPS Approved Software included within the "request header" was not the one expected by FPS.	Please restart your submission, and if the problem persists please contact your supplier.	Non-fatal for a configurable number of attempts.



Code	Service	Message	Details	Action	Severity
T700	Bacs	Your submission has been terminated.	During Bacs Payment Services validation, processing your Submission was terminated.	Please see the application error code or codes for more information. These will detail why your submission has been terminated and what action you should take.	Fatal
T700	FPS	Your submission has been terminated.	During FPS Payment Services validation, processing your Submission was terminated.	Please see the application error code or codes for more information. These will detail why your submission has been terminated and what action you should take	Fatal
T710	Bacs	Your submission has been terminated.	The application web logic session has timed out and has been terminated by BACSTEL-IP.	Please re-connect to BACSTEL-IP.	Fatal
T710	FPS	Your submission has been terminated.	The application web logic session has timed out and has been terminated by Secure-IP.	Please re-connect to Secure-IP.	Fatal
T800	Bacs	Your submission has been terminated.	An internal server error has occurred at Bacs.	Please restart your submission, and if the problem persists please contact Bacs.	Fatal
T800	FPS	Your submission has been terminated.	An internal server error has occurred at FPS.	Please restart your submission, and if the problem persists please contact FPS.	Fatal
T900	Bacs	Your submission has been aborted.	Your software requested that the submission be aborted. Therefore your submission has been terminated	None.	N/A
T900	FPS	Your submission has been aborted.	Your software requested that the submission be aborted. Therefore your submission has been terminated.	None.	N/A

## UHL1 record response codes

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1501	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. A valid UHL1 record did not follow a HDR2 record.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1501	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. A valid UHL1 record did not follow a HDR2 record.	Please contact your solution supplier.

## UTL1 record amount response codes

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1811	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The monetary total of credit payment instructions in UTL1 is not numeric.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1811	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The monetary total of credit payment instructions in UTL1 is not numeric.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1812	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The monetary total of debit payment instructions in UTL1 is not numeric.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1812	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The monetary total of debit payment instructions in UTL1 is not numeric.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1813	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The monetary total of credit payment instructions in UTL1 did not contain the correct monetary total of the credit payment instructions and debit contra amounts since the preceding UHL1.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1813	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The monetary total of credit payment instructions in UTL1 did not contain the correct monetary total of the credit payment instructions and debit contra amounts since the preceding UHL1.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1814	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your Submission. The monetary total of debit payment instructions in UTL1 did not contain the correct monetary total of the debit payment instructions and credit contra amounts since the preceding UHL1.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1814	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your Submission. The monetary total of debit payment instructions in UTL1 did not contain the correct monetary total of the debit payment instructions and credit contra amounts since the preceding UHL1.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1815	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The total value of credit contra records did not equal the total value of credit payment instructions in the day section/file.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1815	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The total value of credit contra records did not equal the total value of credit payment instructions in the day section/file.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1816	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The total value of debit contra records did not equal the total value of debit payment instructions in the day section/file.	Please contact your solution supplier.

## UTL1 record contra response codes

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1801	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. A valid UTL1 record does not follow the EOF2 record.	Please contact your solution supplier.

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1801	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. A valid UTL1 record does not follow the EOF2 record.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1802	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The count of credit payment instructions in UTL1 is not all numeric.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1802	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The count of credit payment instructions in UTL1 is not all numeric.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1803	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The count of debit payment instructions in UTL1 is not all numeric.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1803	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The count of debit payment instructions in UTL1 is not all numeric.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1804	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The count of Direct Debit instruction records in UTL1 is not all numeric.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1805	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The count of credit payment instructions in UTL1 does not contain the correct count of credit payment instructions and debit contra records since the preceding UHL1 record.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1805	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The count of credit payment instructions in UTL1 does not contain the correct count of credit payment instructions since the preceding UHL1 record.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1807	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The count of debit payment instructions in UTL1 does not contain the correct count of debit payment instructions and credit contra records since the preceding UHL1 record.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1807	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The count of debit payment instructions in UTL1 does not contain the correct count of credit contra records since the preceding UHL1 record.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1809	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The count of Direct Debit instruction records in UTL1 does not contain the correct count of Direct Debit instruction records since the preceding UHL1 record.	Please contact your solution supplier.

## VOL1 record response codes

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1101	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. BACS did not receive a valid VOL1 record as the first record of the first slice of your submission.)	Please contact your solution supplier.
1101	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. FPS did not receive a valid VOL1 record as the first record of the first slice of your submission.	Please contact your solution supplier.

Code	Service	Message	Details	Action
1102	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The service user number in the VOL1 record of your submission was not the same as the service user number your software included in the XML submission header.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1102	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The SUN in the VOL1 record of your submission was not the same as the SUN your software included in the XML submission header.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1103	Bacs	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The characters in positions 38 to 41 and 48 to 51 of the VOL1 record must be spaces.	Please contact your solution supplier.
1103	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The characters in positions 38 to 41 and 48 to 51 of the VOL1 record must be spaces.	Please contact your solution supplier.
2023	FPS	Your submission has been rejected	There is an error in the structure of your submission. The characters in positions 5 to 10 of the VOL1 record must be valid allowable characters.	Please contact your solution supplier.

## Appendix F: Glossary

This appendix lists definitions for some of the more commonly encountered terms concerned with using Albany ePAY. Some are product specific while others are industry specific or general computing terms.

Term or Abbreviation	Definition or Description
Account limit	A monetary limit set by the sponsor on an individual account to restrict the value passing through for a fixed period.
Account Reference	An identifier added to an originating or destination account record to aid in identification.
ACH	Automated Clearing House - a term used in the USA and other locations. See CSM.
ADDACS	Automated Direct Debit Amendment and Cancellation Service. These messages are generated by changes to bank account details which affect the Direct Debit instructions set up for an account.
Additional Contact (AC)	A type of contact linked to a service user. An additional contact cannot be given any privileges to maintain their service user or other contacts but can still be allocated a Smart Card with privileges to sign/submit payments and download reports.
Advance Notification	The notice period (normally 10 working days plus postal time) given to the payer in respect of the date of debiting and the amount to be debited.
Agency bank	Any bank participating in the Bacs / Direct Debiting Scheme who is not a sponsor.
Amalgamation of payments	Multiple or combined payments relating to more than one contract collected under a single Direct Debit Instruction (DDI).
APACS	Association for Payment Clearing Services.
API	Application Programming Interface - an interface that allows an application program that is written in a high-level language to use specific data or functions of another program.
ARUCS	Automated Return of Unapplied Credits.
ARUDD	Automated Return of Unpaid Direct Debits - this is the service that Paying Banks use to return unpaid Direct Debits to the originator and its Bank.
AUDDIS	Automated Direct Debit Instruction Service - a way of sending a message electronically via Bacs to set up a Direct Debit.
Audit trail	A regressive process that allows you to see how users and groups are using the system.
Authentication	A method of confirming the identity of a Smart Card in conjunction with a PIN. It is also the process of determining whether someone or something is who or what it is declared to be. In private and public computer networks, (including the internet), authentication is conducted commonly through the use of logon passwords. Knowledge of the password is assumed to guarantee that the user is authentic. Each user registers initially (or is registered by someone else), using an assigned or self-declared password. On each subsequent use, the user must know and use the previously declared password.
AWACS	Advice of Wrong Account for Automated Credit Service.
BAB	Bacs approved bureau – a commercial bureau awarded approval status by Bacs for payment processing on behalf of others.
BACS	Banks Automated Clearing System.
Bacs Ltd	Bacs Payment Schemes Limited. This is the membership-based industry body which promotes best practice amongst those companies who offer automated payment services and is responsible for the associated payment clearing and settlement.

Term or Abbreviation	Definition or Description
Bacs notifications	Delivered via Bacs to provide business critical data in a standardised format for reintegration with 3rd party applications or provision in a readable format. Formats include: ADDACS, ARUCS, ARUDD, AUDDIS, AWACS.
Bacs processing cycle	The Bacs processing cycle is a three day cycle based on the following terms: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Day one is the Input day. Bacs can receive payment details up to 9.00pm.</li> <li>Day two is the Bank Processing day. The banks process the details on this day.</li> <li>Day three is the Entry day. This is the date that transactions are acted upon.</li> </ul> The Input day, Processing day and Entry day cannot fall on a weekend or a Bank holiday.
BACSTEL-IP	An upgrade to the existing BACSTEL service which employs Internet Protocol combined with PKI security.
Bank	Whenever the word bank appears, it refers to a bank or building society.
Bank grade file	A bank grade file contains payments on behalf of many people, all paying from one or more treasury accounts rather than their own accounts.
BASS	Bacs Approved Software Service - Solution suppliers wishing to market Bacs connectivity packages submit their products for testing and if approved, may market themselves as suppliers of Bacs approved solution/software.
BIC	Bank Identification Code - These are used to uniquely identify financial institutions to facilitate cross-border automated payments, as defined by the SWIFT BIC standard. BICs can comprise of 8 or 11 characters, and include a bank code (4 characters), a country code (2 letters), a location code (2 characters) and an optional branch code (3 characters).
Branch	A Branch is a department or office of a financial institution, identified by a sort code.
BUN	Bureau User Number – this is the identification number allocated by Bacs for use by one Bureau submitter business when sending files for multiple businesses which may or may not be legally or financially linked to the bureau. The number is used by the Bacs clearing service to trace the submissions back to the originating submitter. The BUN is provided to the business by the bank and always is prefixed with a B to differentiate it from a SUN, followed by a 5 digit number.
Bureau	The role of the Bureau is to deliver payments via the payment services at VocaLink (commonly referred to as Bacs) on behalf of its customers. A Bureau is accredited by Bacs, undergoing rigorous inspections at regular intervals. Different categories of bureaux are: Commercial – Submitting data to Bacs on behalf of a totally independent third party customers. Bank – offering members service direct. In house commercial group – working solely for the group and submits data to Bacs incorporating either a single company that has different user numbers for different applications or a company group where each individual company has its own user number(s).
Calendar day	A Calendar day is a day according to the Gregorian calendar, e.g. 12 July 2011.
Card Issuer	The organisation or entity that owns and provides a Smart Card product.
Cardholder	The person or entity presenting a Smart Card for use.
Challenge	You will be challenged whenever you connect to a clearing system operator; whether you are submitting or downloading reports. The challenge is in the form of some data which clearing system operator sends to you. You must sign this data using the PKI private key which is stored on your Smart Card. The data and the signature then return to the clearing system operator who can authenticate it.

Term or Abbreviation	Definition or Description
CHAPS	Clearing House Automated Payments System - a funds transfer system which offers same-day sterling and Euro fund transfers. A CHAPS transfer is initiated by the sender to move money to the recipient's account (at another banking institution) where the funds need to be available (cleared) the same working day. This is generally an expensive mode of transfer and is likely to be replaced by Faster Payments.
Chip	This is an integrated circuit that carries card intelligence. Embedded in plastic surface of card and hidden by contacts of gold or silver.
Clearing	Clearing is the method of exchange between financial institutions.
Commercial bureau	A commercial bureau submits data to Bacs Payment Schemes on behalf of totally independent third party customers.
Contact	In the terms of Albany ePAY, a contact is a member of staff within a company or a person or organisation to whom payments are to be made.
Contra	The setting off of mutual debt. For example, if a company owes £100 to another company that is owed £30 by that company in turn, the company is allowed to set off the £30 against the £100 and make a net payment of £70.
Core reference	A unique reference on the Direct Debit Instruction (DDI) of a minimum of six alpha numeric, upper case characters which matches the DDI to the subsequent Direct Debit payments.
Cost centre	Cost centres provide a method for grouping customers and examining all of their charges together. This can be conducted on a regional basis (e.g. Northern sales offices, South-eastern sales offices, South-western sales offices) or by type (Manufacturing plants, sales offices, distribution centres).
Counter claim	A claim raised by a service user against a paying bank following settlement of an indemnity claim which the originator believes to be unjustified.
Counterparty	A contact set up in Payments Manager who either pays or receives monies.
Credit	A transaction that credits a destination account.
CRM	Customer Relationship Management - an information industry term for methodologies, software, and usually Internet capabilities that help an enterprise manage customer relationships in an organised manner.
CSM	Clearing and Settlement Mechanism.
CSV	Comma separated variable – This is a file with fields separated by a pre-defined character, referred to as a delimiter. In a CSV file, this is most commonly a comma.
Data record	A unit of information corresponding to a debit or credit transaction.
Date Bumping	A method by which Bacs will make automatic alterations to payment dates when they fall on a date which is unavailable for processing, e.g. a bank holiday.
DCA	Direct Corporate Access - Part of the Faster Payments service which provides a same day clearing payment service to UK member banks. DCA will provide banks' business customers with direct access to the Faster Payments Service (FPS) clearing service in a very similar way that Bacstel-IP provides access to Bacs.
DDI	Direct Debit Instruction - the authority signed by a customer allowing the Originator to collect DD payments from the customer's account.

Term or Abbreviation	Definition or Description
DDICA	Direct Debit Indemnity Claims Automation – this looks to automate the flow of paper from banks to service users and provide for the automated settlement of the resultant sums of money involved. Banks will benefit from reduced paper flows and certainty of settlement of the values involved. Service users will benefit from the centralised and timely provision of details of indemnity claims submitted for them and reduced costs because the settlement occurs without them needing to submit entries through whatever mechanism they currently use.
Debit	A transaction that debits an account.
Decryption	The process of converting encrypted data back into its original form, so it can be understood. To easily recover the contents of an encrypted signal, the correct decryption key is required. The key is an algorithm that "undoes" the work of the encryption algorithm. Alternatively, a computer can be used in an attempt to "break" the cipher. The more complex the encryption algorithm, the more difficult it becomes to eavesdrop on communications without access to the key.
Delimiter	A divider character between separate fields in a file that indicates a record or field boundary within a body of text, for example the comma is normally the delimiter in a CSV file.
Destination account	The account to which a transaction is addressed.
Digital Certificate	An electronic "credit card" that establishes your credentials when doing business or other transactions on the web. It is issued by a certification authority. A digital certificate contains your name, a serial number, the expiration date, a copy of the certificate holder's public key (used for encrypting and decrypting messages and digital signatures), and the digital signature of the certificate-issuing authority so that a recipient can verify the certificate is genuine.
Digital Signature	An electronic, rather than a written, signature that can be used to authenticate the identity of the sender of a message or the signer of a document. It also can be used to ensure that the original content of the message or document that has been conveyed is unchanged. A digital signature can be used with any kind of message, whether it is encrypted or not, simply so that the receiver can be sure of the sender's identity and that the message arrived is intact. A digital certificate contains the digital signature of the certificate-issuing authority so that anyone can verify that the certificate is genuine.
Direct credit	An electronic payment processed by Bacs Payment Schemes and made direct to a bank or building society.
Direct debit	A payment of an agreed amount collected from a customer's bank account by an originator on request. The amounts and dates may vary from payment to payment.
Direct debit guarantee	The guarantee offered by the paying banks to payers in respect of the Direct Debit Scheme specifying their rights and safeguards.
Direct Submitter	A service user that sends payment information directly to Bacs. This means that by using a piece of software, such as Albany ePAY, payment files are sent to Bacs so that no middleman is involved.
DN	Distinguished Name - each Smart Card user is assigned a unique distinguished name comprising of details such as the contact name (CN), organisational unit (OU), organisation (O), and country (C).
Dormancy period	A period, normally 13 months, from Direct Debit Instruction (DDI) lodgement or last Direct Debit payment, after which a paying bank will drop details of a DDI because no payments have been collected.
Dual Administration	A feature of some versions of Albany ePAY that requires most administrative changes to be authorised by two administrators, thus providing a greater level of administrative security.



Term or Abbreviation	Definition or Description
Due date	The debit date as advised to the payer in the advance notice from the originator.
Duplicate file	A duplicate has the same number of records with the same total using the same Service User Number on the same day.
ECBS	European Committee for Banking Standards.
eCOLLECT	Albany's powerful collections management tool that ensures unsurpassed control and visibility of Direct Debit (DD) collections.
EDI	Electronic Data Interchange - an electronic method for the interchange of documents such as invoices and receipts. Albany eDOCS can use EDI as well as email, faxing and other electronic transfer methods.
eDOCS	Albany's eDOCS is a complete e-document distribution solution. Enabling the production of a range of documents, such as purchase orders, remittance advices and invoices, eDOCS distributes documents at the touch of a button and at a fraction of the cost of traditional methods.
EFT	Electronic Funds Transfer - the electronic transfer of funds that does not involve the exchanging of hard currency.
EISCD	Extended Industry Sort Code Directory - an extended version of the ISCD, a database produced by Bacs which consolidates all Cheque and Credit Clearing, CHAPS and Bacs Payment Schemes sort code related information, as well as information held in the Reeds Sorting Code Directory. Albany's account validation and collections management solutions utilise the ISCD to perform fast, accurate validation of account numbers and sort codes.
Encryption	The conversion of data into a form, called a cipher, which cannot be understood easily by unauthorised persons.
Entry day	The Entry day is the third day of the Bacs processing cycle. This is the day on which transactions are completed, e.g. funds arrive in accounts.
eVERIFY	This application is a powerful validation tool, designed to crosscheck bank account and sort code details against the Extended Industry Sorting Code Directory (EISCD) to ensure their validity. This is included in Albany ePAY, but is also available as a standalone product.
Excel	Microsoft Excel spreadsheet format, normally XLS or XLSX.
Exclusive actions	Exclusive actions enforce security within the system by preventing a user from completing all the steps in a workflow. In these cases a different person is required to conduct each of the steps.
Extranet	An Extranet is a private, secure network that allows the sharing of information between authorised users. An Extranet can be accessible through the Internet, or it can be a direct connection between two points of contact. For example, your company may have a website that is open to all, but sections to which access is limited and secure. That section is an Extranet. an example of an extranet includes OASIS (Open Access Same-Time Information System).
FPS	Faster Payments Service – this is an initiative that facilitates almost 'real time' payments via Bank internet accounts. Telephone banking services or via a service similar to Bacstel-IP using a 'Secure IP' network, for Bacs Direct Credit submitters (including Bacs approved bureaux).
FTP	File Transfer Protocol- a protocol that allows users to copy files between their local system and any system they can reach on the network - effectively a fast internet method for the transfer of data.
GUI	Graphical user interface.
HSM	Hardware Security Module - provides an alternative to a Smart Cards and Smart Card reader for organisations looking to automate the process of authorisation and/or submission.
HTML	HyperText Markup Language - the predominant language for web pages.

Term or Abbreviation	Definition or Description
HTTP	Hypertext Transfer Protocol - a World Wide Web protocol, usually seen as a prefix for a web address.
HTTPS	Hyper Text Transfer Protocol over SSL - see also HTTP and SSL.
IBAN	International Bank Account Number - an IBAN is a unique series of alphanumeric characters that identifies a customer's account held at any bank across the World. IBANs have been introduced to help reduce errors associated with complex cross-border transactions, providing a worldwide standard format for displaying and validating international bank account numbers. IBANs usually contain an ISO country code (2 characters), two check digits for validation purposes, a domestic bank or sort code and the account number.
Indemnity	A document which contains a legally binding undertaking to make payment to a paying bank in response to an indemnity claim . An indemnity , in standard form, is an essential requirement of the Direct Debit scheme.
Indemnity claim	A claim made by the paying bank in respect of an incorrect Direct Debit being applied to an account.
Indirect submitter	A service user that can originate payment information, but does not send it to Bacs itself. It uses a Bureau to send payment information.
Input day	The Input day is the first day of the Bacs processing cycle and is the day on which Bacs receives payment details up to 9:00pm.
Interactive	An interactive process requires that someone is present to provide input while that process is being conducted.
Internet	The Internet is a global computer network which connects individuals and organisations. An Internet service provider (ISP) acts as a gateway between your computer and other users, providing you with access to link to on-line services, or download required information to use off-line. In the case of ALBACS Enterprise, BACSTEL-IP acts as a modified ISP in that it offers a secure connection, but unlike other ISPs, you cannot link to other sites from BACSTEL-IP, nor can unauthorised users enter from other sites.
Intranet	An intranet is a private computer network that uses Internet Protocol technologies to securely share any part of an organisation's information or operational systems within that organisation. The term is used in contrast to internet, a network between organisations, and instead refers to a network within an organisation. Sometimes the term refers only to the organisation's internal website, but may be a more extensive part of the organisation's information technology infrastructure. It may host multiple private websites and constitute an important component and focal point of internal communication and collaboration.
IP	Internet Protocol or Intellectual Property.
ISCD	Industry Sorting Code Directory - A database produced by Bacs which consolidates all Cheque and Credit Clearing, CHAPS and Bacs Payment Schemes sort code related information, as well as information held in the Reeds Sorting Code Directory. Albany's account validation and collections management solutions utilise the EISCD to perform fast, accurate validation of account numbers and sort codes. - see also EISCD.
ISO	International Organization for Standardization.
ISP	Internet Service Provider.
Limit value	A financial limit agreed with the sponsoring bank on an individual account to restrict the value passing through that account for a fixed period.
LMK	Local Master Key - The LMK gives the HSM an identity that is unique to the organisation using that HSM. The LMK is backed up to Smart Cards which are used to restore the HSM in a Disaster Recovery situation.
Lodgement (lodged)	The process of the paying bank accepting the Direct Debit Instruction (DDI).

Term or Abbreviation	Definition or Description
Migration (AUDDIS)	The process by which an originator transfers non AUDDIS Direct Debit Instructions (DDIs) to the automated AUDDIS system, see also AUDDIS.
Modulus Checking	Modulus checking is used by Albany's solutions to check the validity of account numbers for a sorting code. This allows organisations to check the possible validity of account details prior to submission to Bacs, drastically reducing payment and collection errors and delays.
NCC	National Clearing Code - the standard identification code for a country, used to uniquely identify a bank, branch or other financial institution (e.g. a Sort Code in the UK or a Fedwire Number in the United States of America).
Non-interactive	A process carried out within the system when a person is not required to be present to provide input.
OIN	Originator Identification Number - The same 6 digit number as the service user Number (SUN) that is used by organisations to send Direct Submitter payments to Bacs over the Bacstel-IP network. The term OIN has been superseded by the term SUN however some banking institutions still refer to the OIN in their documentation.
Originating account	The account from which a payment originates.
Outside line dialling prefix	The number a modem dials to get an outside line.
Payment date	The date when a Direct Debit is due to be debited from the payee's account.
PDF	Portable Document Format - a generic computer term for a file format that can be read universally. Companies provide free software for download that can be used to read these files. Adobe created the standard and the free software, Adobe Reader, can be downloaded from their website.
PIN	Personal Identification Number - the unique number allocated to use with your Smart Card for security reasons.
PKI	Public Key Infrastructure - a computer technology for secure exchange of information amongst individuals and computer systems. It allows a trusted organisation, such as a bank, to issue Digital Certificates to people and organisations that need to trust each other. It is generally used in conjunction with IP. The certificates are used by their holders to prove their identity. They can also digitally sign documents and transactions. The signature proves the authenticity of the transaction and also proves that the data exchanged has not been modified or tampered with. Digital signatures are now accepted in a court of law. The same technology is also used to encrypt data in transit so nobody other than the intended recipient can read it.
Processing cycle	See <i>Bacs processing cycle</i> .
Processing day	The Processing day is the second day of the Bacs processing cycle and is the day on which banks process details.
Proxy server	A server between a client application, such as a Web browser, and a real server. It intercepts all requests to the real server to see if it can fulfil the requests itself. If not, the request is forwarded to the real server. Proxy servers have two main purposes: to improve performance and filter requests.
Purchase ledger	The purchase ledger is the theoretical accounts book used to record purchases and relates directly to supplier payments.
RBS	Royal Bank of Scotland
RBS Bankline	A payment processing application unique to RBS, Albany ePAY can process payments up to a specific point without a SUN. The payment file is then exported to RBS Bankline for same day or next day processing.
Regular expressions	Syntax used to search files for patterns of similar data.
Remote server	This is a server that is in a separate location to your system.

Term or Abbreviation	Definition or Description
Revoke	When you authorise a payment file, it is assigned to a submission. If you decide you no longer wish to send that file with that submission you must revoke the authorisation. It removes the payment file from submission and revokes the authorisation that placed the file into a submission.
RTF	Rich Text Format - an improved formatting text format, generally used for simple text files.
Sales ledger	The sales ledger is the theoretical accounts book used to record sales and relates directly to amounts received.
SEPA	Single Euro Payment Area - A single payment area in the EU to allow consumers and businesses to move currency across the EU as easily, safely, efficiently and inexpensively as it does within current national borders. This inter-bank standard has prompted a number of third party organisations to develop solutions to meet the growing demand of organisations for streamlined, cost-effective global payments to replace the expensive, time-consuming and unreliable systems currently in place.
SFTP	Secured FTP (File Transfer Protocol) - a secure version of the protocol that allows users to copy files between their local system and a specified secure system.
Smart Card	Credit-card sized plastic card containing a microchip which can hold information in digital format. Such cards are used as part of the authentication process for accessing the BACSTEL-IP network.
Smart Card reader	A Smart Card reader is used to scan information from the chip of an inserted Smart Card and transmit it to Bacs for authentication and authorisation purposes.
SMTP	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol - A messaging standard used to send and receive email.
SOAP	Simple Object Access Protocol - a protocol for exchanging XML-based messages over a computer network, normally using HTTP. It is widely used for applications such as eVERIFY, as it is platform independent and firewall friendly.
Sort code	In the UK, a six digit code uniquely identifying the location of an account.
Sponsoring bank	To use the BACSTEL Service, you must first obtain sponsorship from a Sponsoring Bank. This is usually the bank where your bank account is held. Each sponsor has a Bacs Liaison section or officer.
SQL	Structured Query Language - a Microsoft database programming language. This is used in a Microsoft database that can be used as the back-end to specific Albany software products normally utilised for larger scale installations. Please note Albany do not supply or licence the Microsoft SQL product.
SSL	Secure Sockets Layer - a protocol designed to provide secure communications over the Internet using asymmetric key encryption. It is normally layered beneath application protocols such as HTTP. For example, a secure web page can be identified as HTTP with SSL when the web address begins: HTTPS.
Submission	Submissions are the grouping of different customer's signed files submitted to clearing system operator as one file. You can have single submissions or groups of submissions.
SUN	Service User Number - a unique six digit number allocated by a Sponsoring Bank. It identifies you to Bacs and is normally linked to one or more applications. The Service User Number is an integral part of sending payments through Bacs. It is used for validation of you as an authorised user of the BACSTEL-IP service. A Bureau Service User will have a 'B' plus a five-digit number (i.e. Bnnnnn), occasionally referred to as a BUN.

Term or Abbreviation	Definition or Description
SWIFT	Society for Worldwide Interbank Financial Telecommunication - SWIFT operates and regulates the secure network used to transmit many of the inter-bank electronic payment messages.
Text	A plain text file format, normally TXT.
TIFF	Tagged Image File Format - a file format used for still-image bitmaps, but often used to provide a cross platform image of a text file.
ToDDaSO	Transfer of Direct Debit and Standing Orders - a service to assist customers when moving their Bank/Building Society accounts by electronically transferring Direct Debit and Standing Order information between Banks/Building Societies.
Treasury account	A treasury account is where private or public funds are received, kept, managed, and disbursed.
TXT	A plain text file format.
URL	Uniform Resource Locator - the World Wide Web address of a site on the Internet. The URL for Albany Software Ltd, for example, is <a href="http://www.albany.co.uk">http://www.albany.co.uk</a> .
User	A user is defined by the username and password used to log in to the system. An administrator is a special type of user with additional permissions allowing different actions than a standard user.
Validation	Validation is the act of checking the transactions in the file and ensuring that they are within credit/debit limits, have valid account numbers, have valid sort codes, and have valid processing dates. This is conducted within Albany ePAY using the ALBANY <b>verify</b> module.
Voca	Voca is the provider of payment services to banks and corporates. Today, over 100,000 companies trust Voca with their payments worth over €4.5 trillion a year, including all Direct Debits and over 90% of salaries in the UK.
XML	eXtensible Markup Language - a flexible way to create standard information formats and share both the format and the data on the World Wide Web.

## Index

About Albany ePAY .....	2
Access errors .....	150
Account grouping .....	79
Account locked .....	5, 24
Activate	
Report Download Profile schedules .....	130
Activate your Smart Card .....	49
Active	
Payment Profile Schedules .....	66
Add Bacs service user number .....	82
Add originating account .....	78
Albany Software Limited .....	2
Archiving .....	20
Schedule .....	21
Associate a Bacs User Certificate .....	48
Attach library to payment profile .....	113
Automatic backup .....	28
Automatic updating .....	27
Automation .....	59
Backup failure .....	150
Bacs 3 day processing .....	10
Entry day .....	10
Input day .....	10
Processing day .....	10
Bacs connections .....	23
Bacs Limits .....	80
Limit Usage tab .....	81
Bacs non-processing days .....	30
Bacs payment authorisation .....	13
Bacs SUN Information .....	82
Bacs user certificates .....	48
Associate .....	50
Bank Account Validation database .....	87
Bank Account Validation, Manual update .....	28
Bankline .....	12
Calendar for non-processing days .....	30
Certificate details .....	101
Change password .....	5
Complete payments .....	109
Connect to server failure .....	150
Contact Albany Software Ltd .....	3
Copy file format .....	75
Copy from profile	
Payment Profile Schedules .....	65
Report Download Profile Schedules .....	128
Create a new file format .....	75
Create groups .....	41
Create payment profiles .....	52
Create users .....	37
Current user activity .....	34
Customising grids .....	146
Cutomising grids	
Pinning columns .....	146
Reordering columns .....	147
Daily	
Payment Profile Schedules .....	67
Report Download Profile schedules .....	129
Database backup .....	28
Delete contacts .....	121
Delete payment .....	107
Delete pending payment .....	107
Delete reports .....	124
Delete users .....	39
Disable user account .....	39
Disable user accounts .....	35
Downloading Returns and Advices .....	135
Dual Administration .....	32
Accept/Reject change .....	33
Pending items .....	32
Refresh .....	33
Search .....	33
Clear criteria .....	34
Dates .....	34
Select multiple rows .....	33
Show .....	33
Dual Administration Settings .....	24, 47
Edit a file format .....	73
Edit an originating account .....	80
Edit contacts .....	121
Editions .....	4
Electronic funds transfer .....	1
End of day configuration .....	19
Entry day .....	10
Errors .....	See Troubleshooting
Exclusivity .....	59, 85
Export file format .....	76
Failed to Connect .....	150
Faster payments service .....	11
Processing period .....	11
File formats .....	69, 168
Add new Line or Field .....	73
Create copy .....	75
Create new .....	75
Delete a line or field .....	74
Delimited field order .....	74
Edit .....	73
Elements .....	73, 168
Export .....	76
Import .....	71
Line order .....	74
Start position .....	75
File handling .....	165
Filter reports .....	124
Glossary .....	194
Grid customisation .....	146
Group membership	
Add .....	37
Remove .....	39

Groups .....	40, 41	Payment libraries .....	
Create .....	41	Attach library to payment profile .....	113
Delete .....	41, 42	Create new .....	112
Membership .....	37	Definition .....	110
Modify .....	41, 42	Delete contacts .....	121
Permissions .....	42	Edit contacts .....	121
Help .....	9	Hold contacts .....	121
Hide/Show screen areas .....	8	Import contacts .....	116
Hold or release contact records .....	121	Library maintenance .....	118
HSBC Export .....	12	Library records .....	114
HSM .....	13	Print contacts .....	118
Import file format .....	71	Release contacts .....	121
Import input file failure .....	153	Search contacts .....	120
Import library contacts .....	116	Select contacts .....	118
Input day .....	10	Payment Method .....	
Input file failure .....	153	Report Download Schedule .....	126
Input/Output folder access .....	150	Payment methods .....	10–12
Interface .....	6	Payment profile notification groups .....	83
Library Contacts .....	114	Payment profile notification templates .....	83
Import contacts .....	116	Setup .....	83
Licence .....	2	Payment profiles .....	52
Limitations .....	4	Attach library .....	56
Limit Usage tab .....	81	Create payment profiles .....	52
Links .....		Payment profile notification templates .....	83
Web .....	148	Report Delivery Settings .....	56
Logging in .....	4	Schedule .....	64
Maintaining user accounts .....	39	Workflow .....	58
Mark reports as read/unread .....	123	Payment Settings .....	51
Message to users .....	35	Payment wizard .....	85
Modulus Checking .....	28	Payment Wizard .....	87
Modulus Data .....	30	Payments .....	85
Monthly .....		Authorisation .....	92
Payment Profile Schedules .....	67	Complete .....	109
Report Download Profile schedules .....	129	Overview .....	85
Naming conventions for reports .....	144	Pending .....	103
Navigation menu .....	8	Send .....	96
Height adjustment .....	9	Sent .....	108
Width adjustment .....	8	Start Wizard .....	86
Next available date .....		Validation .....	87, 89
Payment Profile Schedules .....	68	Payments Manager .....	110
Non processing days, Manual update .....	30	Create new library .....	112
On hold .....		Import Library Contacts .....	116
Payment Profile Schedules .....	66	Library Contacts .....	114
Originating accounts .....	78	Pending payments .....	103
Add .....	78	Delete payment .....	107
Duplication .....	79	Permitted users .....	105
Edit .....	80	Resume wizard .....	103
Grouping .....	79	Permission errors .....	150
Remove .....	80	Permissions .....	42
Usage .....	78	Inherited .....	45
Password .....	5, 24, 37	Modify .....	44
Change .....	5	New defaults .....	46
Expiry period .....	24	Permitted users .....	105
Options .....	24	PIN code wrong .....	95
Reuse .....	24	Pinning grid columns .....	146
Setting .....	37	Print contact records .....	118
Payment file .....	100	Processing day .....	10
		Processing rules .....	159
		Profile setup problems .....	154

Public holidays .....	30	Report Download Profile .....	127
Purging and archiving .....	20	Screen number .....	7
Schedule .....	21	Search contacts .....	120
Range of Recurrence .....		Select multiple contacts .....	118
Payment Profile Schedules .....	68	Send failure .....	156
Report Download Profile schedules .....	130	Send message to users .....	35
Rate of information transfer .....	1	Sent payments .....	108
RBS Bankline .....	12, 88	Signing Requirement .....	95
Recurrence .....		Smart Cards .....	13
Payment Profile Schedules .....	66	Sort Code Database .....	30
Report Download Profile schedules .....	129	Sort Code Substitutions .....	30
Register Bacs User Certificates .....	50	Sort reports .....	125
Remove an originating account .....	80	Start date .....	
Remove group membership .....	39	Payment Profile Schedules .....	68
Reordering grid columns .....	147	Report Download Profile schedules .....	130
Report Delivery .....	139	Start time missed .....	
Activate .....	143	Report Download Profile schedules .....	130
Email details .....	141	Start time missed .....	
Export details .....	143	Payment Profile Schedules .....	67
Formats .....	141	Status bar .....	7
On Hold .....	143	Stop on warnings or errors .....	61
Select recipients .....	140	Submission reports .....	97, 131
Select reports .....	140	Submission response errors .....	150
Select SUNs .....	140	SUN .....	82
Report Delivery Settings .....	56	System clock synchronisation .....	157
Report Download Activity .....	143	System Maintenance .....	27
Report Download Profile .....		Time window .....	
Schedule .....	127	Payment Profile Schedules .....	67
Report Download Profile schedules .....		Report Download Profile schedules .....	129
Activate .....	130	Transaction codes .....	113, 115, 164
Notification on failure .....	131	Transaction Details .....	101
Report Download Profiles .....	125	Transaction limit .....	
Create .....	125	Bacs .....	11
Report Download Schedules .....		FPS .....	11
Payment Method .....	126	Transaction procedure .....	11
Report naming conventions .....	144	Transfer speed .....	1
Reports .....	122	Troubleshooting .....	150
delete .....	124	Backup failure .....	150
filter .....	124	Connect failure .....	150
grouped .....	124	Input files .....	153
mark as read/unread .....	123	Input/Output folder access .....	150
Report Download Activity .....	143	Profiles .....	154
Report Download Profiles .....	125	Send failure .....	156
Returns and Advices .....	135	Submission response errors .....	150
Security .....	139	Validation failure .....	156
sort .....	125	Verify Update failure .....	156
Submission reports .....	97, 131	Unread reports .....	122
unread .....	122	User Settings .....	36
Response messages .....	172	Users .....	36
Resume payment wizard .....	103	Add group membership .....	37
Returns and Advices .....	135	Create .....	37
Run once .....		Delete .....	39
Payment Profile Schedules .....	67	Disable .....	35
Report Download Profile schedules .....	129	Disable account .....	39
Schedule .....		Maintaining .....	39
Bank Account Validation Updates .....	28	Modify .....	39
Non Processing Days Updates .....	30	Permissions .....	42
Payment Profiles .....	64	Remove group membership .....	39
Purging and archiving .....	21		



Send message .....	35	Payment Profile Schedules.....	67
Validation database.....	87	Report Download Profile schedules .....	129
Validation failure.....	156	Workflow.....	58–64
Validation reports .....	97	Authorisation .....	62
Verify database connection error .....	156	Confirmation .....	60
Versions .....	4	Exclusivity .....	59, 85
Views.....	8	Send.....	64
Web Links .....	148	Signing .....	64
Weekly		Validation .....	60